



PARENTS' GUIDE

CONNECT

غير مخصصة للبيع
هدية مجانية
لسادة المدرسين

5th

PRIMARY FIVE

SECOND TERM

2025

الصف الخامس الإبتدائي

الفصل الدراسي الثاني



Contents





Punctuation

علامات الترقيم



Capital Letters
الحروف الكبيرة
A - B - C

1. بداية الجملة
خبرية - استفهامية - أمرية

2. الألقاب
Mr - Miss - Mrs
الاختصارات
Dr - CD - TV

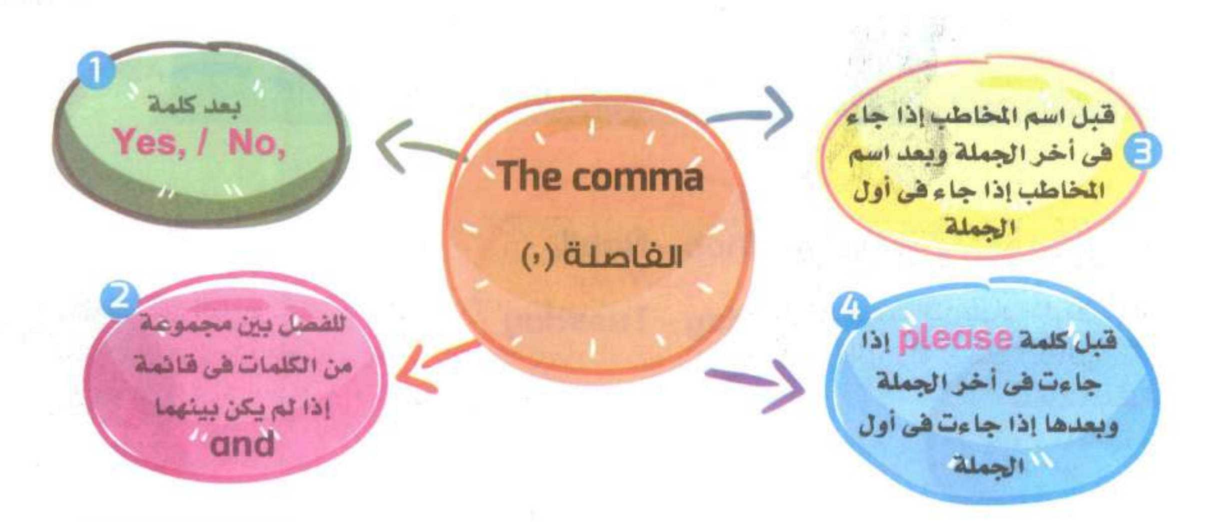
3. أنا I
الضمير I فى أى مكان فى الجملة capital

4. أسماء البلاد والمدن
Cairo - Alexandria
أسماء الشهور
June - March

5. أسماء الأشخاص
Ihab - Nabil
أيام الأسبوع
Friday - Tuesday

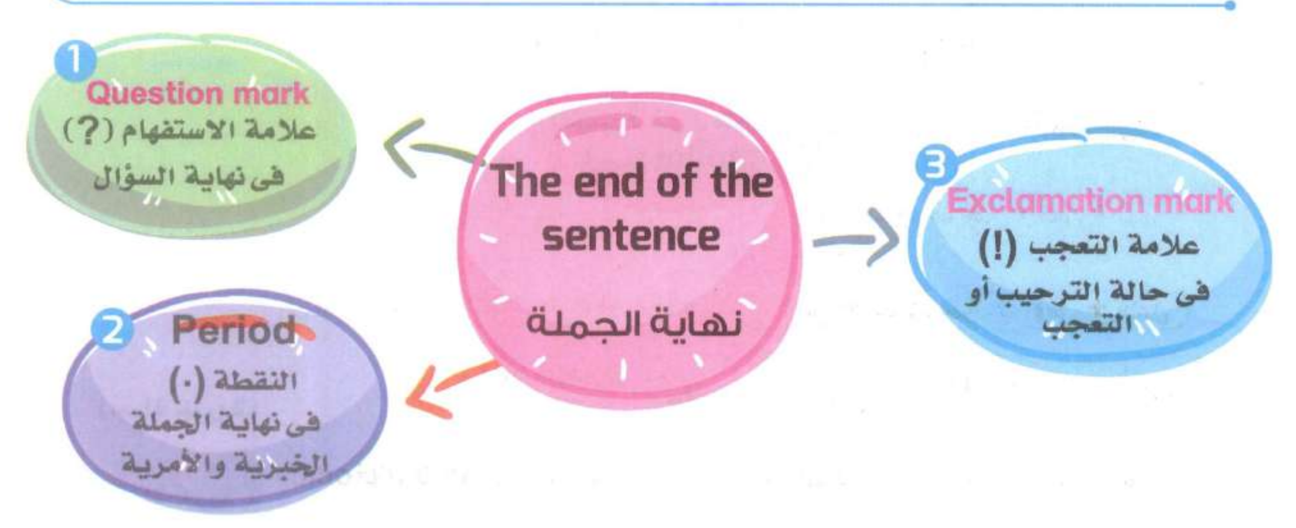
Examples:

1. **I** like my family and friends. (جملة خبرية)
2. **P**ut your book on the desk. (جملة أمرية)
3. **What's** your favorite sport? (جملة استفهامية)
4. **I** have a headache. (الضمير I)
5. I went to **L**uxor last **M**ay. (أسماء المدن والشهور)
6. **M**r Nader goes to the club on **M**onday. (الألقاب وأيام الأسبوع)



Examples:

1- Yes, I am. / No, I am not. (بعد Yes, / No,)
2- I have a pen, a pencil and a book in my bag. (للفصل بين مجموعة كلمات فى قائمة)
3- Study hard, Adel. / Adel, study hard. (اسم مخاطب)
4- Help me, please. / Please, help me. (كلمة Please)



Examples:

1. I visited the Red Sea. (جملة خبرية)
2. Write your homework. (جملة أمرية)
3. How old are you? (جملة استفهامية)
4. Hi! Sameh. (علامة تعجب)





How to write a paragraph?
كيف تكتب فقرة انشائية؟

كيفية الإجابة على سؤال (paragraph)

يطلب من التلاميذ كتابة ثلاثون (٣٠) كلمة عن موضوع من موضوعات كتاب المدرسة ويعطى للتلاميذ عنصرين مساعدين قد يكونوا عبارتين أو سؤالين أو ملف حقائق لذلك نقدم شرح لكيفية التعامل مع هذا السؤال:

• حتى نكون الجملة بشكل صحيح يجب أن نتعلم مكونات الجملة وترتيبها فى اللغة الإنجليزية حيث تتكون من:

أولا ترتيب الجملة

فاعل			فعل		تكلمة الجملة
اسم شخص	مكان	شىء	مضارع بسيط / مستمر	ماضى بسيط / مستمر	ظرف زمان - مكان / صفة / حال
Ahmed	School	Car	is going / go / goes	was doing / did	home / yesterday happy / well

ثانيا صيغ الجمل المختلفة

فاعل + verb to be + صفة	She is fine.
فاعل + verb to be + وظيفة	Samy is a vet.
فاعل + فعل + حرف جر + مكان	He went to the park.
فاعل + فعل + حرف جر + زمن	We are open on Friday.
فاعل + فعل + مفعول	I help her.
فاعل + فعل + حرف جر + الساعة	I wake up at 9 o'clock.

Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

أكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة باستخدام العناصر المرشدة:

My new house

Guiding phrases
moved to - bigger than

My father had a new job, so we moved to a new house. It's close to his work. The new house is bigger than our old house. I like living here.



How to write a biography?
كيف تكتب سيرة ذاتية؟

كيفية الإجابة على سؤال (Biography)

يطلب من التلاميذ كتابة حوالى ثلاثون (٣٠) كلمة عن سيرة ذاتية عن شخصية مشهورة قد تكون رياضية أو علمية أو سياسية بالاستعانة بالعنصرين المساعدين:

Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

أكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة باستخدام العناصر المرشدة:

Mohamed Salah

Guiding questions

1- Where was he born?
2- Why is he a famous player?

Mohamed Salah is a famous Egyptian football player around the world. He was born in Gharbia governorate in 1992. He scores many goals in his team. I like him very much.

Ahmed Zweil

Guiding phrases:

was born - Egyptian scientist

Ahmed Zweil is a famous Egyptian scientist. He was clever in science. He was born in Damanhur, Egypt. He got the Noble Prize in 1999 in chemistry. He is a great man.

Tips to answer the comprehension questions

ارشادات للإجابة عن أسئلة قطعة الفهم

أولاً: أسئلة الاختيار من متعدد **(multiple-choice)**

1 قد يطلب منك تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية (main idea) فى النص من خلال صيغ مثل:

- The main idea of the passage is..................
- The passage is mainly about....................

وعليك أن تختار الإجابة الصحيحة من أربعة اختيارات تُعطى لك.

كيف تجد الفكرة الرئيسية فى النص

- هى النقطة الأساسية التى يكرر الكاتب الحديث عنها.
- تكون جملة وليست سؤالا.
- الجمل الأخرى فى النص تعطى تفاصيل ومعلومات عنها.
- غالباً تكون فى أول جملة أو آخر جملة فى النص.

لاحظ المثال الآتى

- ما باللون الأحمر هى الفكرة الرئيسية وما باللون الأزرق هى التفاصيل عنها.

Yesterday, I got a new coat. My new coat is blue and red. My coat is very nice and keeps me warm. On the back, there is a picture of a snow man. I will wear my coat to school.

2 قد يقوم واضع الامتحان بإضافة خط تحت أحد الكلمات فى جملة معينة فى القطعة ثم تجد سؤال اختيار من متعدد يقول : الكلمة الموضوع تحتها خط تشير إلى ....

- The underlined word '.......' refers to ....

ثانيًا: أسئلة **(open-ended)** استفهامية

3 قد يطلب واضع الامتحان منك تلخيصاً **(summarize)** لأحد الفقرات فى النص فى جملة واحدة بالصيغة الآتية:

- Summarize the first / second / third paragraph (into one sentence).

كيف تلخص فقرة إلى جملة أو اكثر

١- حدد اسم الشخص او الشئ او الحيوان الاساسى بالفقرة المطلوب تلخيصها

٢- حدد اهم شئ يخص ذلك الشخص أو الشئ او الحيوان واستخدم اهم الافعال بالفقرة للتعبير عن ذلك وممكن استخدام افعال اخرى تؤدى نفس المعنى.

٣- استبعد الأفكار الفرعية او الغير أساسية او المعلومات الأقل أهمية.

٤- أكتب الفكرة الأساسية فى حدود خمسة كلمات أو حسب ما يطلب.

أمثلة مجابة

1- Summarize the first paragraph of the text in two lines.

Tourists come to Egypt to see the Pyramids, temples and other monuments. It is a wonderful visit for them. Tourists also come to see the wonderful natural world such as the desert and the Red Sea.

تتبع الخطوات السابقة:

١- الفقرة تتعلق بشكل اساسى بالسائحين **tourists**

٢- أهم ما يخصهم هو زيارة مصر والأماكن السياحية بها والأفعال التى تعبر عن ذلك **come / see /visit**

٣- استبعد المعلومات الأقل أهمية من كل جملة.

٤- قم بكتابة تلخيص الفقرة

Summary

Tourists come to Egypt to see the Pyramids and the wonderful natural world such as the Red Sea.

2- Summarize the last paragraph in one sentence of your own words.

My father enjoys playing football with his friends. He believes in doing sports and teaches us the same. He wants me to be clever at school. I want to make him feel proud of me one day.

١- أهم شخص **My father**

٢- وأهم شئ يخصه أنه يؤمن بممارسة الرياضة ويريدني أن أتفوق في دراستي.

٣- استبعد المعلومات الأقل أهمية من كل جملة.

٤ - قم بكتابة تلخيص الفقرة.

Summary

My father thinks that doing sports is very important and he wants me to be clever at school.

Specifications for Fifth Year Primary

مواصفات الصف الخامس الابتدائي ٢٠٢٤ - ٢٠٢٥



Marks:30

Time: One hour and a half

A- Listening (4 Marks)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 Marks)

A text about **FIFTY (50)** words related to the Set Books is provided. Learners are asked to listen to the text and answer **FOUR (4)** multiple choice questions **MCQs** with **FOUR (4)** options each. **(One mark each)**

B- Reading (10 Marks)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (1.5 Marks)

THREE (3) MCQs related to vocabulary based on the Set Books are provided. Learners are asked to choose the correct answer from the **FOUR (4)** options given.

(Half a mark each)

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (1.5 Marks)

An unseen text from **FIFTY (50)** to **SIXTY (60)** words with **THREE (3)** deletions is provided. **FOUR (4)** words related to vocabulary are also given in a box. Learners are asked to complete each deletion in the text with **ONE** of the **FOUR (4)** words given. The first sentence should be written in full.

(Half a mark each)

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (7 Marks)

An unseen literary or informational text from **EIGHTY (80)** to **NINETY (90)** words is provided. The text should be at the appropriate difficulty level for **primary FIVE**. Learners are asked to answer:

A. TWO (2) MCQs with **FOUR (4)** options; each dealing with **TWO (2)** of the following reading comprehension skills:

- Identify the general idea of the text.
- Demonstrate understanding of specific details in the text.
- Determine the meaning of words and phrases in the text.

(Half a mark each)

B: **THREE (3) open-ended** questions dealing with **TWO (2)** of the following reading comprehension skills:

- Describe the relationship between two people, events, ideas, or pieces of information in a text.
- Make logical inferences from the text.
- Summarize the key supporting details and ideas in the text.

(Two marks each)

C- Writing (16 Marks)

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (1 Mark)

TWO (2) scrambled statements of not less than **SIX (6)** words each are provided. Learners are asked to reorder the words to form correct sentences.

(Half a mark each)

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4 Marks)

TWO (2) structure sentences related to what learners have studied are provided. Learners are asked to complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) given between brackets. **(Two marks each)**

7 Punctuate the following: (4 Marks)

TWO (2) simple statements (sentence **OR** question) of about **SIX (6)** words each are provided. Each statement has **TWO (2)** missing punctuation marks **(Capital Letter / Full Stop / Question Mark / Exclamation Mark / Comma)**. Learners are asked to punctuate them correctly. **(One mark each)**

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: (7 Marks)

Learners are asked to write not less than **THIRTY (30)** words related to a specific topic using **TWO (2)** given guiding elements that can be phrases, questions, fact file, tables.....etc. in **ONE (1)** of the following writing forms:

- Paragraph
- Biography

(Two marks for relevance of ideas – Two marks for vocabulary- One mark for grammar- One mark for spelling- One mark for punctuation)

طريقة شرح السؤال السادس فى ورقة الامتحان

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس.

- يطلب من الطالب تصحيح الكلمة من بين القوسين حسب القواعد اللغوية التى درسها.

- يعطى للطالب جملتين للتدريب على القواعد اللغوية التى درسها ويكتب الطالب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة من بين القوسين.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. He is .... **(is)** very frightened yesterday.

   He **was** very frightened yesterday.

2. She didn't .... **(went)** to the park.

   She didn't **go** to the park.

3. The baby is crying. He is .... **(happy)**.

   The baby is crying. He is **unhappy**.

4. Can you .... **(reading)** a story?

   Can you **read** a story?

5. How do you .... **(feeling)**?

   How do you **feel**?

6. I like .... **(play)** sports.

   I like **playing** sports.

7. What do you do .... **(in)** Saturdays?

   What do you do **on** Saturdays?

8. Last week, my parents .... **(buys)** a new apartment.

   Last week, my parents **bought** a new apartment.



My society
Homes in Egypt

المنازل في مصر



Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about Egyptian homes now and in Ancient Egypt.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن المنازل المصرية الآن وفي مصر القديمة.

2. Talk about the home and furniture.

- يتحدث الطالب عن المنزل والأثاث.

3. Read, understand, and listen to a short dialog about different homes.

- يقرأ الطالب ويفهم ويستمع إلى حوار قصير حول منازل مختلفة.

4. Understand and use the simple past to talk about past events.

- يفهم الطالب ويستخدم الماضي البسيط للحديث عن الأحداث الماضية.

5. Learn how to say double vowels.

- يتعلم الطالب كيفية نطق الحروف المتحركة المضاعفة.

6. Write a simple blog about an unusual home.

- يكتب الطالب مدونة بسيطة عن منزل غريب.

7. Research and make a presentation about an Ancient Egyptian home.

- يعمل الطالب بحث ويقدم عرض تقديمي عن منزل مصري قديم (فى مصر القديمة).

Lesson 1 ★ The Home

Key vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات:


armchair
كرسى ذو مسندين


bed
سرير


cushion
وسادة


closet
دولاب / خزانة

At home
فى المنزل


elevator مصعد


oven فرن


shower دش


television تليفزيون



Rooms in an apartment الغرف فى الشقة

living room	حجرة المعيشة	bedroom	حجرة النوم
kitchen	مطبخ	bathroom	حمام
balcony	بلكونة / شرفة		

ADJECTIVES صفات

old	قديم	fantastic	رائع
new	جديد	easier	أسهل
modern	حديث	traditional	تقليدى
bigger	أكبر	great	رائع
closer	أقرب	lovely	جميل

Other words كلمات أخرى

apartment	شقة	was born	وُلد
town	مدينة صغيرة	Thanks	أشكرك
How long?	كم المدة؟	space	مساحة
since	منذ	gift	هدية
parents	الوالدين	view	منظر
job	وظيفة	What about?	ماذا عن؟

Expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف الجر

welcome to	مرحبًا	as you can see	مثلما ترى
share a room with	يشارك غرفة مع	what a great view	يا له من منظر رائع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
live	يعيش	lived
move to	ينتقل إلى (يعزل)	moved to
cook	يطبخ	cooked
share	يشارك	shared
prefer	يفضل	preferred

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
come in	يدخل	came in
have to	يجب أن	had to
see	يرى	saw

Study the following

1. Welcome to my new apartment! – مرحبا بكم في شقتي الجديدة!
2. Do you like living here? – هل تحب العيش هنا؟
3. How long did you live in your old apartment? – كم المدة التى عشتها في شقتك القديمة؟
4. We moved to a closer apartment. – انتقلنا إلى شقة أقرب.
5. What's better about this new apartment? – ما الشئ الافضل في هذه الشقة الجديدة؟
6. My mom says it's much easier to cook in.
   – تقول أمي أن الطهى اسهل بكثير (بداخل المطبخ).
7. There's more space so we can have a bigger television.
   – هناك مساحة أكبر لذلك يمكننا امتلاك تلفاز أكبر.

8 They were a gift from Grandma. - كانوا (الوسادات) هدية من الجدة.
9 I share a room with my sister. - أشارك غرفة مع أختي.
10 The balcony is fantastic too - what a great view! - الشرفة رائعة أيضًا - يا له من منظر رائع!
11 Where do you live? - أين تسكن (تعيش)؟
12 Do you live in a house or an apartment? - هل تعيش فى منزل ام شقة؟

1 Look and write: انظر واكتب:

armchair - balcony - cushion - closet - elevator - oven - shower - television

1 elevator
2 ----------
3 ----------
4 ----------
5 ----------
6 ----------
7 ----------
8 ----------

2 Complete the mindmap : اكمل الخريطة الذهنية :

اكتب الأشياء الآتية عند الحجرة المناسبة لها.

armchair - bed - cushion - closet - oven - shower - television - cushion

Rooms in an apartment

- Living room: ---------- / ---------- / ----------
- Kitchen: ----------
- Bedroom: closet / ---------- / ----------
- Bathroom: ----------

3 Listen and read. Why is Fareeda happy?

استمع واقرأ. لماذا فريدة سعيدة؟

Tapescript نص الاستماع





استمع إلى النص:

Fareeda: Hi Dina, welcome to my new apartment! Come in!

Dina: Thanks! Do you like living here?

Fareeda: I love it! It's a great apartment! I like this part of town and it's much bigger than our old apartment.

Dina: How long did you live in your old apartment?

Fareeda: Twelve years, since I was born. Then my parents had to move to a new job, so we moved to a closer apartment.

Dina: So, what's better about this new apartment?

Fareeda: Come and see. The new kitchen is bigger, and the oven is more modern. My mom says it's much easier to cook in.

Dina: Very nice. And this is the living room?

Fareeda: Yes, as you can see, there's more space so we can have a bigger television. Look at these traditional cushions. They were a gift from Grandma.

Dina: Oh, yes! What about the bedrooms?

Fareeda: We have three bedrooms now. I share a room with my sister, Amira, but our bedroom is really big. And we have two bathrooms.

Dina: It's lovely! The balcony is fantastic too - what a great view!



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Fatma lives in a modern ....

a street b city c apartment d house

2. Fatma has three .... in the living room.

a closets b showers c cushion d armchairs

3. Fatma bakes bread in the ....

a oven b closet c cushion d elevator

4. The .... is next to the bedroom in Fatma's apartment.

a balcony b living room c kitchen d bathroom

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We have a new .... which is much easier to cook in. المنوفية - ادارة أشمون (2023)

a television b oven c closet d shower

2. My sister can sleep on her small ....

a elevator b cushion c television d oven

3. Dina .... a room with her younger sister.

a shares b comes c cooks d moves

4. In the evening, I watched a film on ....

a shower b armchair c television d elevator

5. There's a big oven in the .... الاسكندرية - إدارة شرق (2024)

a kitchen b bathroom c living room d bedroom

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

balcony - bathroom - share - near

Adel's family moved to a new apartment in Giza. It's much bigger than their old apartment. The new apartment is ❶ .... the Pyramids. We can see a wonderful view from the ❷ .... There are three big bedrooms in the new apartment. Adel ❸ .... a room with his brother, Emad. الشرقية - إدارة شرق الزقازيق (2024)

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة: القليوبية - إدارة الخانكة (2023)

My name is Mona. I moved to a new apartment last week. I love this new apartment. It is much bigger than our old apartment. The new kitchen is bigger, and the oven is more modern. It's much easier to cook in. The living room is bigger than the old one so we can have a bigger television. We have three bedrooms now. I share a room with my sister, Dalia, but our bedroom is really big. I like our apartment.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mona moved to a new ....

a school b class c apartment d city

2. We cook food in the ....

a apartment b bedroom c television d oven

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the text in one sentence. ....

4. How many bedrooms are there in the new apartment? ....

5. When did Mona move to the new apartment? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. do - live - Where - you? .... أسيوط - أدارة الفتح (2023)

2. living - here - Do - you - like? .... الجيزة - أدارة أوسيم (2023)

3. moved - apartment - to - a closer - We. ....

4. were - a - from - They - Grandma - gift. ....

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

what about the bedrooms ....

7 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Your new apartment

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Guiding questions

1- When did you move to your new apartment?

2- How is your new apartment?

....

....

Lesson 2 ★ My perfect room





استمع إلى المفردات:

ADJECTIVES & OPPOSITES صفات وعكسها

friendly	ودود	unfriendly	غير ودود
comfortable	مريح	uncomfortable	غير مريح
lucky	محظوظ	unlucky	غير محظوظ
safe	آمن	unsafe	غير آمن
happy	سعيد	unhappy	غير سعيد
fair	عادل	unfair	غير عادل

Prepositions of place حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

on the right	على اليمين	in the middle of the room	فى منتصف الحجرة
on the left	على اليسار	next to	بجوار
on the wall	على الحائط/ الجدار		



In the Jungle فى الغابة

howler monkey	قرد العواء (سعدان العواء)	deep	عميق / بعيد فى عمق....
a local villager	احد سكان القرية المحليين	path	طريق



Other words كلمات أخرى

perfect	رائع / مثالى	nearby / close	قريب
poster	ملصق	jungle	غابة
dark	مظلم	heavy rain	مطر غزير
alone	وحيد	go forward	يذهب للامام
make friends	يكون صداقات	go back toward	يذهب للخلف تجاه
scientist	عالم	suddenly	فجأة
frightening	مرعب/ مخيف	indeed	بالفعل
interested in	مهتم بـ	on holiday	فى اجازة
do some research	يقوم بعمل بعض الابحاث	sculpture	تمثال
		cases	حقائب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present	مضارع	Past ماض	Present	مضارع	Past ماض
die	يموت	died	sit	يجلس	sat
miss	يفتقد / يفوت	missed	eat	يأكل	ate
smile	يبتسم	smiled	leave	يغادر	left
try	يحاول	tried	go	يذهب	went
visit	يزور	visited	meet	يقابل	met
love	يحب	loved	tell	يخبر	told
look up	ينظر لاعلى	looked up	set out	يبدأ رحلة	set out
shout	يصرخ	shouted	know	يعرف	knew
carry	يحمل	carried	wear	يرتدى	wore
create	ينشئ	created	come	يأتى	came



Definitions تعريفات

unfriendly	غير ودود	not kind to someone
uncomfortable	غير مريح	something that doesn't feel nice to sit on or wear on your body
unlucky	غير محظوظ	something bad happens to you without a reason
unsafe	غير آمن	dangerous
unhappy	غير سعيد	sad
unfair	غير عادل	something that happens that isn't morally right or fair



Study the following

1. On the right, there is my bed with a desk next to it.

- على اليمين يوجد سريري وبجانبه مكتب.

2. On the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.

- على الحائط يوجد الكثير من الملصقات الخاصة بالحيوانات.

3. My uncle is a scientist and loves animals. - عمي عالم وهو يحب الحيوانات.

4. The people were very friendly and helped him with his work.

- كان الناس ودودين للغاية وساعدوه في عمله.

5. He was very interested in howler monkeys. - كان مهتمًا جدًا بقرود العواء.

6. He knew he was very close to them. - كان يعلم أنه قريب جدًا منهم.

7. It was very heavy rain. - كان هناك أمطار غزيرة جدا.

8. There was water everywhere and he couldn't see the path to go forward or back. - كان هناك ماء في كل مكان ولم يستطع رؤية الطريق للمضي قدمًا أو للخلف.

9. Suddenly, lots of water came toward him. - فجأة جاء الكثير من الماء نحوه.

10. He was very frightened. - كان خائفا جدا.

11. My uncle was very happy indeed! - كان عمي سعيدا جدا حقا!

12. He's very unlucky because he misses the bus.

- إنه غير محظوظ للغاية لأنه لم يلحق الاتوبيس.

13. She's very unhappy- she never smiles or tries to make friends.

- إنها غير سعيدة للغاية - فهى لا تبتسم أبدًا أو تحاول تكوين صداقات.

14. She created a fantastic sculpture from the garbage.

- صنعت تمثالًا رائعًا من القمامة.

15. We carried our heavy cases to the car. - حملنا حقائبنا الثقيلة إلى السيارة.

Grammar قواعد لغوية

The past simple tense زمن الماضى البسيط

1 نستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط

◉ للتعبير عن حدث تم فى الماضى وانتهى.

- للتعبير عن فعل حدث مرة واحدة فى الماضى أو فعل حدث عدة مرات فى الماضى أو حدث كان حقيقة لفترة من الوقت فى الماضى.

- I visited her house when I was five.
- We went to my aunt's house at the beach every summer.

◉ يتكون زمن الماضى البسيط من:

.باقى الجملة + فعل فى التصريف الثانى + فاعل (كل الضمائر)

- I met her in Zagazig two years ago.

◉ تنقسم الافعال إلى أفعال منتظمة وأفعال غير منتظمة:

اولا: الافعال المنتظمة: هى الافعال التى نضيف اليها (ed) فى الماضى:

want → wanted	help → helped

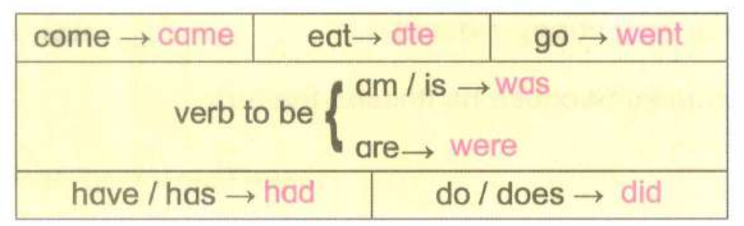
- إذا انتهى الفعل المنتظم بحرف (e) نضيف اليه (d) فقط فى الماضى:

die → died	like → liked

- وإذا انتهى بحرف (y) يسبقه حرف ساكن نحذف حرف (y) ونضيف (ied):

study → studied	carry → carried

ثانيا: الافعال غير المنتظمة: وهى الافعال التى لا يضاف اليها (ed) فى الماضى:



come → came	eat → ate	go → went
verb to be { am / is → was ; are → were		
have / has → had	do / does → did	

2 Negative النفى

◉ لنفى الفعل فى الماضى البسيط نستخدم:

مصدر الفعل .inf + didn't + فاعل

فعل فى التصريف الثانى + never + فاعل

- He didn't go to the park.
- He never went to the park.

3 Question السؤال

◉ وفى السؤال نستخدم:

? مصدر الفعل .inf + فاعل + did + كلمة استفهام

- When did people start to live in Egypt?

◉ أو ممكن ان نبدا السؤال بـ: Did وتكون الاجابة ,No, or Yes:

- Did they write the homework?
- Yes, they did. اجابة مثبتة   No, they didn't. اجابة فى النفى

4 Key words الكلمات الدالة

yesterday – last (week – month – year) – once – in the past
ago – in ancient times – in + year (in 2020)

The prefix (un-)   البادئة (un-)

◉ هناك بعض المقاطع التى تسمى بادئات و التى يمكن اضافتها أول بعض الكلمات حيث تغير المعنى مثال البادئة (-un) والتى تعطى النفى من الكلمة:

happy → unhappy	safe → unsafe

◉ لاحظ:

- unhappy = not happy   uncomfortable = not comfortable
- He looks unhappy. = He doesn't look happy.
- The armchair is very uncomfortable. =The armchair isn't comfortable.

1 Read about the bedroom :   اقرا عن غرفة النوم:

I love my bedroom. I share it with my sister. On the right, there is my bed with a desk next to it. On the left, there is my sister's bed. In the middle of the room, there is an armchair with two cushions and a big closet. On the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.

2 Match the words to their meanings:

صل الكلمات بمعانيها :

1 unfriendly	a. sad
2 uncomfortable	b. dangerous
3 unlucky	c. something that doesn't feel nice to sit on or wear on your body
4 unsafe	d. something that happens that isn't morally right or fair
5 unhappy	e. something bad happens to you without a reason
6 unfair	f. not kind to someone

3 Complete the sentences with the words in Exercise 2:

اكمل الجمل بكلمات من التمرين السابق :

1- His cat died last week. He was very ....

2- I never sit in that green armchair - it's very ....

3- Don't go down the street in the dark alone - it's very ....

4- That's very .... - you ate everything and didn't leave any for us!

5- He's very .... because he missed the bus.

6- She's very .... - she never smiles or tries to make friends.

4 Underline the past simple verbs in the text. Mark the regular verbs (R) and the irregular verbs (I):

ضع خط تحت الافعال التى فى الماضى البسيط فى النص. اكتب (R) عند الافعال المنتظمة واكتب (I) عند الافعال غير المنتظمة :



استمع إلى النص :

My uncle is a scientist(1) and loves animals. When he was younger, he traveled a lot in South America(2) for work. He loved it there because the people were very friendly(3) and helped him with his work. Then, about three years ago, something frightening(4) happened to him and he was lucky(5) he lived to tell me about it! He was very interested in(6) howler monkeys(7) and wanted to do some research into their family groups. A local villager(8) told him where there was a howler monkey family nearby and he was very happy. But the villager also said, "Tomorrow, we are going to have a lot of rain so it could be unsafe(9)."

My uncle set out to look for the howler monkey family and soon he was deep in the jungle. He could hear the monkeys and he looked up. He knew he was very close to(10) them. Then the rain started. It was very heavy rain(11). Soon, there was water everywhere and he couldn't see the path(12) to go forward or back.

Suddenly, lots of water came toward him and carried him away down to the river. He was very frightened. Suddenly, he saw a hand and someone was shouting. It was the villager. He took Uncle's hand and said, "Now you are safe!" My uncle was very happy indeed(13)!

Arabic Meaning

١- عالم
٢- امريكا الجنوبية
٣- ودودين
٤- مخيف/مرعب
٥- محظوظ
٦- مهتم بـ
٧- قرود العواء
٨- احد سكان القرية المحليين
٩- غير امن
١٠- قريب لـ
١١- مطر غزير
١٢- طريق
١٣- بالفعل



Howler monkeys in the jungle

5 Complete the sentences with the verbs in brackets in the past simple:

اكمل الجمل باستخدام الافعال التى بين الاقواس بصيغة الماضى البسيط :

1- When we went to Sharm El-Sheikh on holiday, we .... (meet) some new friends.
2- She .... (create) a fantastic sculpture from the garbage.
3- We .... (carry) our heavy cases to the car.
4- His grandma .... (go) to Aswan last year.
5- Yesterday, my cousin .... (come) to visit us.

6 Make the sentences negative:

كون النفى من الجمل :

1- He traveled all over Egypt. He didn't travel all over Egypt.
2- He ate Om Ali in Tanta. ....
3- It rained yesterday. ....
4- They came here by airplane. ....



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. "............" means not kind to someone. القاهرة - أدارة السلام (2023)

a Good　b Friendly　c Unfriendly　d Safe

2. On the ...., there is a closet.

a night　b right　c write　d light

3. The opposite of "safe" is ....

a unhappy　b dangerous　c unfair　d unlucky

4. Don't sleep on this bed, it's very ....

a comfortable　b uncomfortable　c fair　d unfriendly

5. My uncle is very .... in howler monkeys.

a unlucky　b interested　c scared　d safe

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

small - right - armchair - living room

Mona's parents had to move to a new city, so they moved to a new apartment. It is bigger than the old one. It has a large ❶ .... Inside the living room, there is an ❷ .... on the left. There's a television on the ❸ .... There is a desk in the middle of the room. الدقهلية - إدارة ميت غمر (2024)

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Amr went to the zoo yesterday. He went with his family. They saw a lot of animals. They saw the howler monkeys, lions and elephants. I tried to feed the animals. Mom told me it was unsafe to do this. Some children were **unfriendly** to the animals so dad was angry. He told them to stop hurting the animals. My sister was frightened when she saw the lion. We had lunch at the zoo. It was a nice day.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**unfriendly**" means ....

a sad　b dangerous　c not kind　d lucky

2. The text is mainly about visiting the ....

a school b zoo c park d desert

B- Answer the following questions:

3. When did Amr go to the zoo? ....

4. Why was dad angry? ....

5. What did Amr try to do? ....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The baby is crying. He is .... (happy).
2. .... (Do) you visit your grandparents yesterday?
3. I .... (visit) my sick relatives in hospital yesterday. الغربية - إدارة شرق طنطا (2023)
4. I .... (meet) her in Cairo two years ago.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

بنى سويف - أدارة بنى سويف (2023)

1. did - last - week - What - buy - you? ....
2. are - lots - of - posters - There - of animals. ....
3. grandma - year - Aswan - went - to - last - His. ....
4. uncle - loves - is - a scientist - My - and - animals. ....

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

- i met Miss manar yesterday. ....

7 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

In the jungle

Guiding phrases

saw howler monkeys - unsafe to go

....

....

Lesson 3 ★ Ancient Egyptian Homes

Key vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات:

mud bricks	الطوب اللبن (طوب من الطين)	pot	إناء
roof	سطح المنزل	oven	فرن
reed mat	حصيرة من البوص	sleeping area	منطقة النوم
gate	بوابة		

Other words كلمات أخرى

Ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	the same	نفس الشيء
the Nile	نهر النيل	outside	خارج
drinking	الشرب	crops	محاصيل
cooking	الطبخ	wooden box	صندوق خشبي
washing	الغسيل/ الغُسل	floor	طابق / دور فى مبنى
strong	قوى	the countryside	الريف
cool	بارد (جو لطيف)	chicken	دجاجة
flat	مسطح / مستوٍ	banks of the river	ضفاف النهر
hot nights	ليالى حاره	by	بجوار
furniture	اثاث	special style	نمط خاص
different from	مختلف عن	wind	رياح
papyrus	البردى	all right	بخير
insects	حشرات	near	قريب من - بالقرب من

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
use	يستخدم	used
paint	يطلي / يدهن	painted
cook	يطبخ / يطهو	cooked
relax	يسترخي	relaxed
cover	يغطي	covered
save	يوفر / يدخر	saved
join	يربط	joined
store	يخزن	stored

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
make	يجعل / يصنع	made
keep	يحافظ على / يربي	kept
have	يملك	had
sleep	ينام	slept
build	يبني	built
grow	ينمو / يزرع	grew
blow	يهب (للرياح)	blew
feel	يشعر	felt
fall	يسقط	fell

Study the following

1. In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the Nile.
   - في مصر القديمة بنى الكثير من الناس منازلهم بالقرب من النيل.
2. They used its water for drinking, cooking, and washing.
   - استخدموا مياه النيل للشرب والطبخ والغسيل.
3. They also used mud from the river to make bricks for their houses.
   - كما استخدموا طين من النهر لصنع الطوب لمنازلهم.
4. The mud bricks made very strong walls.
   - صنع الطوب اللبن جدرانًا (حوائط) قوية جدًا.
5. Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes cool.
   - أراد المصريون القدماء الحفاظ على برودة منازلهم.
6. Some people also painted their homes white to make them cooler.
   - قام بعض الناس أيضًا بطلاء منازلهم باللون الأبيض لجعلها أكثر برودة.

7 Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs, which were the coolest part of the house.

- كانت جميع المنازل المصرية القديمة ذات أسطح مستوية ، والتي كانت اكثر جزء بارد فى المنزل.

8 The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today.

- كان الأثاث في المنازل المصرية القديمة مختلفًا تمامًا عن وقتنا الحالى.

9 There were reed mats to sit and sleep on.

- كانت هناك حصائر من البوص للجلوس والنوم عليها.

10 They used papyrus to cover the windows and doors.

- استخدموا ورق البردي لتغطية النوافذ والأبواب.

11 In every home, there were large pots and baskets for storing crops and wooden boxes for clothes.

- في كل منزل ، كان هناك أواني وسلال كبيرة لتخزين المحاصيل وصناديق خشبية للملابس.

12 Not many people had beds or chairs.

- لم يكن لدى الكثير من الناس أسرة أو كراسي.

13 They grew vegetables and kept chickens there.

- كانوا يزرعون الخضار ويربون الدجاج هناك.

1 Read the passage. Decide if the sentences are True (T) or False (F). Correct the false ones in your notebook:

اقرأ النص. حدد ما اذا كانت الجمل صحيحة أو خطأ ثم صحح الجمل الخطأ فى كراستك:


استمع إلى النص:

In Ancient Egypt(1), many people made their homes near the Nile. They used its water for drinking, cooking, and washing. They also used mud from the river to make bricks for their houses. The mud bricks(2) made very strong walls.

Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep(3) their homes cool(4). The mud bricks helped do this. Some people also painted their homes white to make them cooler. Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs(5), which were the coolest part of the house. Families often cooked, ate, relaxed(6), and slept there on hot nights.

The furniture(7) in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today.

Arabic Meaning

١- مصر القديمة
٢- الطوب اللبن
٣- يحافظ على
٤- بارد
٥- اسطح مستوية
٦- استرخوا
٧- أثاث

There were reed mats[8] to sit and sleep on. They used papyrus[9] to cover the windows and doors. This kept the insects outside. In every home, there were large pots and baskets for storing[10] crops and wooden boxes for clothes. Not many people had beds or chairs.

٨- حصير من البوص
٩- البردى
١٠- تخزين
١١- طابقان/دوران
١٢- مساحة

In cities, people lived very close together, and so they built their houses taller, with two floors[11]. This saved space[12] so they could build more houses. City houses joined together, just like today. In the countryside, houses usually only had one floor, and they also had a garden. They grew vegetables and kept chickens there.

1- A lot of people made their homes near the Nile. ☐

2- In Ancient Egypt, people used water from the Red Sea for drinking. ☐

3- The mud bricks helped Ancient Egyptians to keep their homes cool. ☐

4- The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes wasn't the same as today. ☐

5- The Ancient Egyptians stored their clothes in metal boxes. ☐

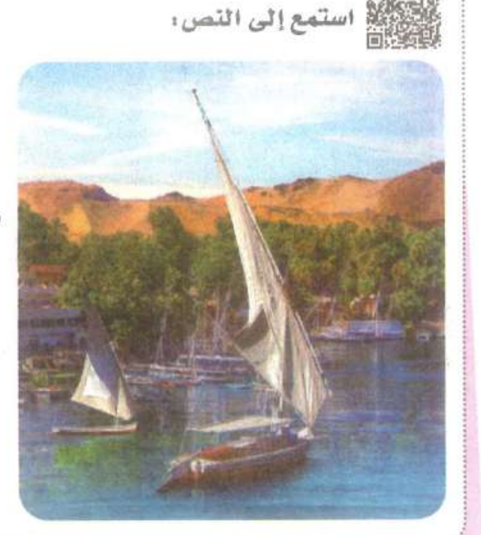
6- The houses in cities usually had one floor only. ☐

2 Read and listen to the poem:

اقرأ واستمع إلى القصيدة:

استمع إلى النص:

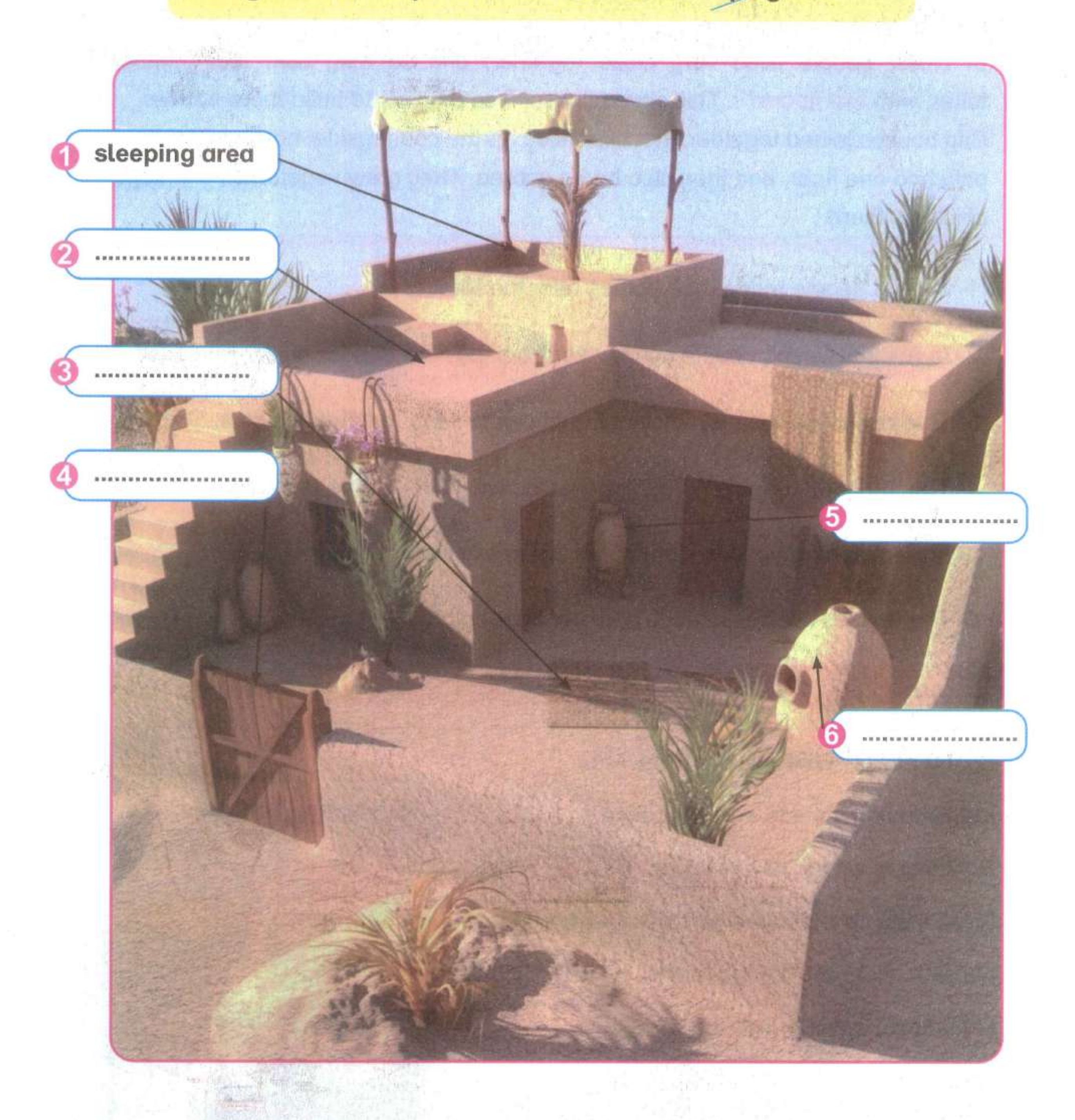
By the banks of the ancient River Nile,
Egyptian houses had a special style:
Dark inside with small windows,
Reed mats on the roof where the cool wind blows,
Outside under the stars at night,
One family together, feeling all right.
Mud from the Nile made their walls
Safe and strong, and never to fall.



3 Listen and write the labels on the ancient Egyptian house:

استمع واكتب الاشياء داخل المنزل المصرى القديم:

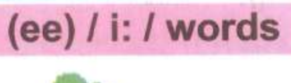
gate - oven - pot - roof - reed mat - sleeping area



Pronunciation



استمع إلى المفردات:



(ee) / i: / words





tree شجرة



sheep خروف



seed بذرة



queen ملكة

(oo) /uː/ words



spoon ملعقة



roof سطح



pool حمام سباحة



school مدرسة



tool اداة



food طعام



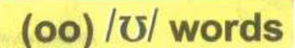
zoo حديقة الحيوان



smooth ناعم / املس



noon فترة الظهيرة



(oo) /ʊ/ words



wood خشب



book كتاب



cook يطبخ / طباخ



good جيد



wool صوف

(oo) /ʌ/ words





blood دم



flood فيضان

◉ ندرس فى هذا الدرس نطق الحروف المتحركة المضاعفة (oo) / (ee) فى بعض الكلمات:

- حيث ينطق حرفى (ee) مثل نطق صوت (e) الممتد / long e / i: لكن حرفى (oo) ممكن ان ينطقا بثلاث طرق كما يلى:

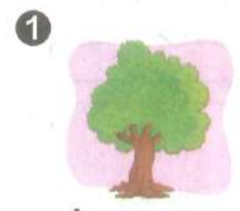
١- مثل صوت (o) ممتد النطق long o مثل الرمز الصوتى /uː/ كما فى الكلمات: spoon - roof - school - pool

٢- مثل الرمز الصوتى /ʊ/ كما فى الكلمات: wood - book - cook

٣- مثل الرمز الصوتى /ʌ/ كما فى الكلمات: flood - blood

1 Write the double vowel words with ee or oo:

اكتب الحروف المتحركة المضاعفة ee أو oo:

❶ 
tr_ ee _

❷ 
sp _ _ _ _ _ _

❸ 
sh _ _ _ _ _ _

❹ 
r _ _ _ _ _ _

❺
s _ _ _ _ _ _

❻ 
s _ _ _ _ _ _

❼
q _ _ _ _ _ _

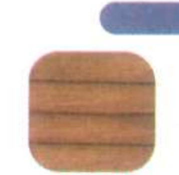
❽ 
p _ _ _ _ _ _

2 Listen and write the words you hear. Then listen again and repeat:

استمع واكتب الكلمات التى تسمعها. ثم استمع مرة اخرى وردد:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

استمع إلى النص:


❶ wood


❷ _ _ _ _ _ _


❸ _ _ _ _ _ _


❹ _ _ _ _ _ _


❺ _ _ _ _ _ _


❻ _ _ _ _ _ _

3 Read. Put the oo words in the correct column in the table. Then listen and check:

اقرأ وضع الكلمات التى تحتوى على (oo) فى العمود الصحيح فى الجدول ثم استمع وتأكد:

~~school~~ - ~~book~~ - ~~flood~~ - smooth - cook - blood - food - zoo - wood - wool - noon - spoon - pool - good

/uː/	/ʊ/	/ʌ/
school	book	flood



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة: القاهرة - ادارة الشروق (2024)

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. In Ancient Egyptians, people made their houses ____________ the Nile.
   a in b on c under d near
2. They used the Nile's ____________ for drinking and cooking.
   a mud b papyrus c water d plants
3. They used mud from the river to make ____________ .
   a beds b bricks c chairs d windows
4. Some people painted their homes ____________ to make them cooler.
   a white b black c gray d blue

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

pots - roofs - reed - cover

The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes were very different from today. They were ❶ __________ mats to sit on and sleep. They used papyrus to ❷ __________ the windows and doors. In every home, there were large ❸ __________ and baskets for storing crops and wooden boxes for clothes. البحيرة - إدارة أبو حمص (2023)

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. had - two - in cities - floors - The houses.

----

2. bricks - The - strong - mud - walls - made - very. الاسكندرية - إدارة شرق (2024)

----

3. their - homes - did - people - What - use - to build?

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4. did - build - their - **Where** - homes - people?

- -

5. painted - their - **People** - white - homes.

- -

6. grew - chickens - and - **They** - kept - vegetables.

- -

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Not many people in Ancient Egypt .... (**have**) beds or chairs.
   المنوفية - إدارة قويسنا (2024)
2. The furniture in Ancient Egyptian .... (**is**) very different from today.
3. Many years ago, mud bricks .... (**make**) very strong walls. اسوان - إدارة إدفو (2024)
4. The Ancient Egyptians .... (**store**) their clothes in metal boxes in the past.
5. What .... (**do**) Ancient Egyptians use to store their crops in the the past?

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

Ancient egyptians kept their homes cool

- -

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Homes in Ancient Egypt

Guiding phrases

keep their homes cool - had flat roofs

- -

- -

- -

- -

Lesson 4 Writing

Key vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات:

unusual homes	منازل غريبة	awesome	رائع
blogging	التدوين فى مدونة	boring	ممل
ecological	بيئى / صديق للبيئة	funny	مضحك
farmhouse	منزل ريفى	brilliant	رائع
landscape	منظر طبيعى	cool	جميل
awful	فظيع	friendly	ودود
annoying	مزعج	interesting	شيق



Other words كلمات أخرى

week	أسبوع	at the top	على القمة / فى اعلى
topic	موضوع	light	ضوء
architect	مهندس معمارى	local people	اشخاص / سكان محليون
Netherlands	هولندا	farm	مزرعة
online	عبر / على الإنترنت	field	حقل
upside down	مقلوب رأسا على عقب	heat	حرارة
actually	فعليا / بالفعل	energy	طاقة
modern	حديث		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض
change	يغير	changed
work	يعمل	worked
fit	يلائم/ يناسب	fitted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض
write	يكتب	wrote
take	يأخذ	took
find	يجد	found
get	يحصل على	got

Definitions تعريفات

blogging التدوين فى مدونة: to write about something in an online blog

ecological بيئى/صديق للبيئة: related to living thing and their environments



Study the following

1. I like blogging about different things. – أنا أحب التدوين عن أشياء مختلفة.
2. This week I'm writing about unusual homes. – أكتب هذا الأسبوع عن منازل غريبة.
3. This topic is very interesting for me. – هذا الموضوع مثير جدا للاهتمام بالنسبة لي.
4. I found this unusual house in the Netherlands online. – لقد وجدت هذا المنزل الغريب في هولندا على الإنترنت.
5. It is actually an old farmhouse which people are changing to make it modern. – إنه في الواقع منزل ريفى قديم يغيره الناس ليجعلوه حديث.
6. Local people like it because it fits in very well with the local landscape. – يحبه السكان المحليون لأنه يتلاءم جيدًا مع المناظر الطبيعية المحلية.
7. It is also very ecological because they use air, water, and sun to heat and make energy for the house. – كما أنه صديق للبيئة لأنه يستخدم الهواء والماء والشمس للتدفئة وتوليد الطاقة للمنزل.
8. What do you think of it? – ما رأيك في ذلك؟
9. Do you like it? – هل أحببت ذلك؟

1 Read Dalida's blog and answer her question: اقرأ مدونة داليدا واجب عن سؤالها:

Dalida

BLOG HOME ABOUT ME LINKS ARCHIVE



Wednesday, 8th November

استمع إلى النص:



Unusual homes

Hi! My name's Dalida and I like blogging(1) about different things. This week I'm writing about unusual(2) homes. This topic(3) is very interesting for me because my mom's an architect(4), so she sometimes takes me to see some brilliant places(5). It's really awesome! I found this unusual house in the Netherlands(6) online(7) - it's upside down(8)! It is actually(9) an old farmhouse which people are changing to make it modern. This works very well because all the windows are at the top, so you get a lot of light(10). Local people like it because it fits(11) in very well with the local landscape(12), which is farms and fields. It is also very ecological(13) because they use air, water, and sun to heat and make energy for the house. That's so cool! What do you think of it? Do you like it?



Upside down house in the Netherlands

Arabic Meaning

١-التدوين
٢-غريب
٣-موضوع
٤-مهندس معمارى
٥-اماكن رائعة
٦-هولندا
٧-عبر الانترنت
٨-مقلوب راسا على عقب
٩-فعليا
١٠-ضوء
١١-يلاءم/ يناسب
١٢-منظر طبيعى
١٣-صديق للبيئة

2 Decide if the sentences about Dalida's blog are True (T) or False (F)

حدد إذا كانت الجمل الآتية عن مدونة داليدا صح أو خطأ:

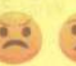
1. The house is in France. ☐
2. It's in a city. ☐
3. Dalida visited the house. ☐
4. It's ecologically friendly. ☐

Tip! Writing a blog

ارشادات كتابة مدونة على الإنترنت:

1- Write about something you like and enjoy.

2- Write to your readers as if you are speaking to them. Use contractions (I'm, it's) and words like "awesome" and "cool".

3- Use exclamation marks (!) and emojis:   

4- Give your opinion and invite your readers to give theirs.

5- Check that your spelling is correct.

3 Using adjectives in a blog makes it interesting. Sort the adjectives into positive and negative adjectives:

يضفي استخدام الصفات تشويقا للمدونة. صنف الصفات إلى ايجابية وسلبية:

awful - annoying - awesome - boring - funny - brilliant - cool - friendly - interesting

Positive	Negative
funny	awful

4 Write your blog. Find an unusual house or home and write about it. Write 30-40 words:

اكتب مدونتك. أوجد منزلا أو بيتا غريب. واكتب عنه من ٣٠ إلى ٤٠ كلمة:

Write:

- where it is and give some information about it.
- what you think about it and why.
- ask the readers about their opinion.





1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Dalia's uncle is a/an ....

   a architect b farmer c teacher d cook

2. Dalia's uncle lives in an old ....

   a houseboat b apartment c farmhouse d town

3. .... were very funny.

   a Chickens b Goats c Cows d Sheep

4. The .... are brilliant.

   a crops b farmers c fields d animals

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

upside - blogging - architect - ecological

Yesterday, my teacher asked us to do homework about unusual homes around the world. My mom helped me because she's an ❶ .... We found an old farmhouse in the Netherlands. It's ❷ .... down. It's also very ❸ .... I liked it very much.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. homes - unusual - think of - What - you - do? (الشرقية - إدارة ههيا (2023))

   ....

2. is - also - ecological - very - It.

   ....

3. think - do - you - What - of - it?

   ....

4. writing - about - I'm - homes - unusual. (البحيرة - إدارة أبو حمص (2023))

   ....

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

5. interesting - is - **The topic** - for me - very.

----

6. found - in - the Netherlands - this unusual - **I** - house.

----

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The windows .... (**is**) on the top.
2. This week, I'm .... (**write**) about different things.
3. Do you .... (**liked**) this unusual home? الشرقية - إدارة منيا القمح (2023)
4. My mom is an architect and she .... (**take**) me to some brilliant places.
5. I like .... (**blog**) about different countries. الجيزة - إدارة العياط (2024)

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

what do you think of it

----

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Unusual homes

Guiding questions

1- Where is the unusual home?
2- Why is the home unusual?

Review

Key vocabulary

At home في المنزل


armchair
كرسى ذو مسندين


bed
سرير


cushion
وسادة


closet
دولاب / خزانة


elevator
مصعد


shower
دش


television
تليفزيون


oven
فرن

mud bricks	الطوب اللبن
roof	سطح المنزل
reed mat	حصيرة من البوص
gate	بوابة
unusual homes	منازل غريبة
blogging	التدوين فى مدونة
ecological	بيئى / صديق للبيئة
farmhouse	منزل ريفى
landscape	منظر طبيعى
awful	فظيع

annoying	مزعج
oven	فرن
sleeping area	منطقة النوم
awesome	رائع
boring	ممل
funny	مضحك
brilliant	رائع
cool	جميل
friendly	ودود
interesting	شيق

In the Jungle في الغابة

howler monkey	قرد العواء
a local villager	احد سكان القرية المحليين

deep	عميق
path	طريق

Help your child revise unit 7. ساعد طفلك يراجع الوحدة السابعة.

Adjectives & Opposites صفات وعكسها

friendly	ودود	unfriendly	غير ودود
comfortable	مريح	uncomfortable	غير مريح
lucky	محظوظ	unlucky	غير محظوظ
safe	آمن	unsafe	غير آمن
happy	سعيد	unhappy	غير سعيد
fair	عادل	unfair	غير عادل

Prepositions of place حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

on the right	على اليمين	in the middle of the room	فى منتصف الحجرة
on the left	على اليسار	next to	بجوار
on the wall	على الحائط/ الجدار		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
live	يعيش	lived
move to	ينتقل إلى (يعزل)	moved to
share	يشارك	shared
die	يموت	died
miss	يفتقد / يفوت	missed
smile	يبتسم	smiled
try	يحاول	tried
carry	يحمل	carried
create	ينشئ	created
use	يستخدم	used
cook	يطبخ/ يطهو	cooked
save	يوفر/ يدخر	saved
work	يعمل	worked
fit	يلائم/ يناسب	fitted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
see	يرى	saw
sit	يجلس	sat
eat	يأكل	ate
leave	يغادر	left
meet	يقابل	met
tell	يخبر	told
set out	يبدأ رحلة	set out
keep	يحافظ على/ يربى	kept
sleep	ينام	slept
build	يبنى	built
grow	ينمو/ يزرع	grew
blow	يهب (للرياح)	blew
feel	يشعر	felt
fall	يسقط	fell
write	يكتب	wrote

Grammar قواعد لغوية

The past simple tense زمن الماضى البسيط

1 نستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط

◉ للتعبير عن حدث تم فى الماضى وانتهى.

- I visited her house when I was five

◉ يتكون الزمن الماضى البسيط من:

.باقى الجملة + فعل فى التصريف الثانى + فاعل (كل الضمائر)

- I met her in Cairo three years ago.

◉ تنقسم الأفعال إلى أفعال منتظمة وأفعال غير منتظمة:

اولا: الافعال المنتظمة: هى الافعال التى نضيف اليها (ed) فى الماضى:

want → wanted	help → helped

ثانيا: الافعال غير المنتظمة: وهى الافعال التى لا يضاف اليها (ed) فى الماضى:

come → came	eat→ ate	go → went
verb to be { am / is → was; are→ were		
have / has → had	do / does → did	

2 Negative النفى

◉ لنفى الفعل فى الماضى البسيط نستخدم:

مصدر الفعل .inf + didn't + فاعل

فعل فى التصريف الثانى + never + فاعل

- He didn't go to the park. - He never went to the park.

3 Question السؤال

◉ وفى السؤال نستخدم:

? مصدر الفعل .inf + فاعل + did + كلمة استفهام

- When did people start to live in Egypt?

◉ أو ممكن ان نبدا السؤال بـ: Did وتكون الاجابة ,Yes or ,No:

- Did they write the homework?

- Yes, they did. اجابة مثبتة: No, they didn't. اجابة فى النفى:

4 Key words الكلمات الدالة

yesterday – last (week – month – year) – once – in the past – ago – in ancient times – in + year (in 2020)



Write a text of THIRTY (30) words.

Lesson 1
Your new apartment

1 We moved to a new apartment last week. My father had a new job. He bought a fantastic apartment. There are three bedrooms. There's a big television in the living room. The new kitchen is bigger than the old one. It's easier to cook in.

Lesson 2
In the jungle

2 I went to the jungle with my father yesterday. My father is a scientist. He did some research on howler monkeys. We saw many animals in the jungle. It's unsafe to go to the jungle alone. I enjoyed my day.

Lesson 3
Homes in Ancient Egypt

3 Ancient Egyptians used mud bricks to build their homes. They used mud from the river to make mud bricks. The mud bricks made very strong walls. They helped to keep their homes cool, too. Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs, which were the coolest part of the house.

Lesson 4
Unusual homes

4 I read a book about unusual homes. There was an old farmhouse in the Netherlands. It was upside down. It was very ecological and local people liked it. It was so cool.

Test - Unit 7
The furniture in Ancient Egypt

5 The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today. There were reed mats to sit and sleep on. They used large pots and baskets for storing crops and wooden boxes for clothes.

Al-Azhar Test

اختبار خاص بالأزهر الشريف



A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. My uncle is a .... (farmer - teacher - vet)
2. My uncle loves .... (food - animals - insects)
3. He has .... children. (one - four - two)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ و أكمل المحادثة:

apartment - Twenty - live - long

A : Where do you ❶ ....?

B : I live in an ❷ ....

A : How ❸ .... did you live in your apartment?

B : ❹ .... years, since I was born.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the questions: أقرا و اجب عن الأسئلة:

Hello, I'm Magdy. I'm 15 years old. My father has a farm. My brother and I play on our farm on the weekends. We have a big house on the farm. There are four rooms in our house. I love my bedroom. I share it with my brother. We are a happy family.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. How old is Magdy?

....

2. What does Magdy's father have?

....

B - Choose the correct answer:

3. There are .... rooms in our house. (three - four - six)
4. They are a .... family. (nice - sad - happy)
5. Magdy loves his .... (living room - bathroom - bedroom)

D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I visited his house when I .... five.

   a) was   b) am   c) are

2. .... the left, there is my sister's bed.

   a) In   b) At   c) On

3. On the wall , there are lots of .... of animals.

   a) boxes   b) pens   c) posters

4. His cat died last week. He was very ....

   a) unhappy   b) happy   c) nice

5. I .... her in Cairo two years ago.

   a) meet   b) met   c) meets

5 Read and reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اقرأ و اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملا صحيحة:

1. is - My - room - nice - living.

....

2. very - is - topic - interesting - This.

....

3. airplane - came - here - They - by.

....

4. blogging - different - like - I - things - about.

....

5. big - your - Is - small - or - apartment?

....



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Ahmed lives in a .... house.
   - a narrow
   - b small
   - c big
   - d dirty
2. Ahmed shares his bedroom with his ....
   - a cousin
   - b sister
   - c brother
   - d parents
3. There's a/an .... next to Ahmed's bed.
   - a desk
   - b armchair
   - c cushion
   - d closet
4. There are posters of .... on Ahmed's bedroom.
   - a plants
   - b animals
   - c players
   - d fruits

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Ancient Egyptians slept on reed .... الجيزة - إدارة أوسيم (2023)
   - a mats
   - b bats
   - c ovens
   - d bricks
2. Ancient Egyptians used mud bricks to make homes .... المنيا - إدارة المنيا (2023)
   - a strong
   - b hot
   - c long
   - d weak
3. I like sitting on this armchair. It's very .... المنوفية - إدارة أشمون (2023)
   - a comfortable
   - b unfriendly
   - c unlucky
   - d unsafe

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

local - howler - path - frightened

I went with my uncle to the jungle last week. My uncle is a scientist and he is interested in animals. He wanted to do research about ❶ .... monkeys. The ❷ .... villagers helped him, but I was very ❸ ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة

There are different types of homes all over the world. Many people live in apartments in big cities. These apartments are in big buildings. The buildings have many floors so people use elevators to go to their apartments. People live in houses in the countryside. The houses have gardens around **them**. On hot nights people sleep on roofs because it is cooler there. In the desert people sleep in tents.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The general idea of the text is about ....

a people b houses c roofs d floors

2. The underlined word "**them**" refers to ....

a gardens b cities c houses d deserts

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Why do people use elevators? ....
4. What do people do on hot nights? ....
5. Summarize the text in two sentences. ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. heavy - was - very - rain - **It**. ....
2. homes - did - people - **What** - use to - build? ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I couldn't wear my new shoes. They were .... (**comfortable**).
2. What did you .... (**doing**) last weekend? سوهاج - إدارة سوهاج (2023)

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. i like blogging about different things ....
2. what do you learn about Ancient egyptian homes? ....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

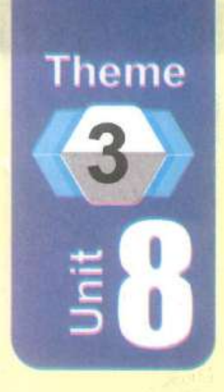
مجاب آخر الوحدة

The furniture in Ancient Egypt

Guiding phrases

- reed mats to sit and sleep
- large pots for storing crops

....
....
....
....



My society

At the doctor's

في عيادة الطبيب



Objectives of the Unit

أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about different illnesses and treatments.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن الأمراض والعلاج.

2. Practice using "have" to talk about illnesses.

- يتدرب الطالب علي استخدام الفعل "have" للتحدث عن الأمراض.

3. Listen to and understand a conversation between a doctor and a patient.

- يستمع الطالب إلى محادثة بين طبيب ومريض.

4. Learn about and use the prefixes "un, ir, il, and im".

- يتعلم الطالب استخدام بادئات الكلام لاعطاء عكس المعنى (un - ir - il - im).

5. Understand the difference between /f/ and /v/ sounds.

- يفهم الطالب الفرق بين الصوتين / f / و / v /.

6. Write a short paragraph about staying healthy.

- يكتب الطالب فقرة إنشائية عن كيف تكون بصحة جيدة.

7. Plan what to put in a first-aid kit and make a poster.

- يضع الطالب خطة ما الذى يجب وضعه فى صندوق الاسعافات الأولية ويعمل ملصق.

Lesson 1 THEY DIDN'T COME TO THE CLUB!

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



backache
ألم بالظهر



cold
برد

sore throat
التهاب بالحلق

headache
صداع



earache
ألم بالأذن





toothache
ألم بالأسنان



cough كحة / سعال

Other words كلمات أخرى

problem	مشكلة	coach	مدرب
ankle	كاحل - رسغ القدم	feel better	يشعر بتحسن
tooth	سِنة	milk	لبن
stomach	معدة	honey	عسل
shoulder	كتف	practice	تدريب - تمرين
swimming	السباحة	club	نادى
dentist	طبيب أسنان	really	حقًا / جدًا

Adjectives صفات

good	جيد	careful	حريص
OK	بصحة جيدة	worried	قلق
bad	سيىء		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
hope	يأمل	hoped
talk	يتكلم	talked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
have / has	مصاب بـ - يملك	had
hurt	يؤلم	hurt
say	يقول	said

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

1 لسؤال شخص مما تشكو؟

- What's the matter? مما تشكو؟

وللرد نستخدم: My + عضو الجسم + hurts.

- My tooth hurts.

2 لطلب شيء بطريقة مهذبة

- Can I + مصدر الفعل ....? هل من الممكن أن.....؟
- Can I have some milk and honey?



Study the following

1. Did you have a good day at the club? – هل قضيت يومًا ممتعًا فى النادى؟
2. Only five people came to the club today. – أتى خمسة أشخاص فقط إلى النادى اليوم.
3. Are you OK? – هل أنت بخير؟
4. My friend Tarek hurt his ankle at football practice last night. – اصيب صديقى طارق بألم فى كاحله فى تدريب كرة القدم الليلة الماضية.
5. Two of my friends have a cold. – اصيب أثنين من زملائى بالبرد.
6. The coach told us to be careful. – أخبرنا المدرب بأن نكون حذرين.
7. How do you feel? – كيف تشعر؟
8. I hope they'll feel better tomorrow. – أتمني أن يشعروا بتحسن غدًا.



9 I'm worried about my friends. - أنا قلق على زملائى.

10 What's the matter? - مما تشكو؟

11 Can I have some milk and honey? - هل ممكن أن أتناول بعض من اللبن والعسل؟

12 It really hurts. - أنها تؤلمني حقًا.

13 Amr has an earache from swimming. - عمرو مصاب بألم فى الأذن من السباحة.

1 Listen and read: How does Fares feel today?

استمع واقرأ: كيف يشعر فارس اليوم؟

Tapescript نص الاستماع





استمع إلى النص:

Mom : Hi Fares! Did you have a good day at the club?
Fares : Not really. Only five people came to the club today!
Mom : Oh no! Are they OK?
Fares : No, they have problems. My friend Tarek hurt his ankle at football practice last night. And Amr has an earache from swimming.
Mom : What about your cousin Lama? Your aunt said she had a toothache.
Fares : No, she wasn't there. I think she went to the dentist. Two of my friends have a cold. The coach told us to be careful. When we have a cough or a sore throat, we should stay home!
Mom : How do you feel?
Fares : Well, I have a backache and I'm worried about my friends. I hope they'll feel better tomorrow.
Mom : I hope so, too!

2 Listen again and number the photos in the order that Mom and Fares talk about them:

استمع مرة أخرى ورقم الصور حسب الحوار السابق بين فارس ووالدته:

a ☐

b ☐



c ☐





d 1

e ☐



f ☐



3 Listen again. Circle the correct words

استمع مرة أخرى. اختر الكلمة الصحيحة :

1. Fares had a **bad** / **good** day at the club.
2. Tarek hurt his **ankle / ear** at football practice.
3. Fares thinks Lama went to the **doctor / dentist**.
4. Two of Fares's friends have **a cold / an earache**.
5. Fares's **leg / back** hurts.

4 Read the words in the box. Look at the pictures and complete the sentences, then listen and check:

اقرأ الكلمات فى المربع. أنظر إلى الصور وأكمل الجمل، ثم استمع وتأكد



cough - headache - shoulder - toothache

❶



Mom: What's the matter, Dina?
Do you have a toothache ?
Dina: Yes. My tooth hurts!

❷



Mom , can I have some milk and honey for my ...., please?

❸



Ouch! My .... hurts!

❹



Mom: What's the matter, Wael?
Does your stomach hurt?
Wael: No, I have a ....



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Amr had a ....
   a headache   b toothache   c backache   d sore throat
2. Amr didn't come to the .... practice.
   a tennis   b basketball   c football   d swimming
3. Amr went to the ....
   a vet   b dentist   c nurse   d doctor
4. The doctor told Amr to have .... drinks.
   a cold   b hot   c sweet   d unhealthy

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I'm .... about my sick friends.
   a worried   b good   c happy   d lucky
2. I have a sore throat, I should .... home. الشرقية - إدارة الزقازيق (2023)
   a clean   b stay   c hope   d leave
3. The coach told us to be .... البحيرة - إدارة كوم حمادة (2024)
   a care   b careful   c careless   d bad
4. She went to the dentist because she had a/an .... الإسكندرية - إدارة برج العرب (2023)
   a earache   b headache   c toothache   d backache
5. Lana ate something bad. She has a/an .... الدقهلية - إدارة غرب المنصورة (2023)
   a earache   b cough   c headache   d stomachache
6. Ahmed .... his ankle at a basketball practice. البحيرة - إدارة أبو حمص (2024)
   a swam   b told   c hurt   d came

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة: الشرقية - إدارة أبو حماد (2023)

Fares had a bad day yesterday. He went to the club but only five of his friends came. They had problems. His friend Tarek hurt his ankle at football practise last night. And Gamal had an earache from swimming. Two of his friends had a cold. His cousin Lama went to the dentist because she had a toothache. Fares was very worried about his friends.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about Fares's ....
   a parents b family c friends d sister
2. Fares was very .... about his friends.
   a happy b worried c unfair d tired

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Where did Fares go yesterday? ....
4. Why did Lama go to the dentist? ....
5. Who had an earache? ....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

المنوفية - إدارة أشمون (2023)

1. has - Fatma - toothache - a. ....
2. I - have - Can - milk - some? ....

الجيزة - إدارة أوسيم (2023)

3. Ali - throat - a sore - has. ....

الشرقية - إدارة ههيا (2023)

4. the club - at - a bad - We - day - had. ....

القليوبية - إدارة شرق شبرا الخيمة (2024)

5. hurt - his - Ali - ankle - yesterday. ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. My tooth .... (hurting).
2. Can I .... (have) some medicine, please? القاهرة - إدارة دار السلام (2023)
3. How .... (does) you feel?
4. What .... (are) the matter?

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

how do you feel ....

7 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

A toothache

Guiding phrases

tooth hurts - go to the dentist

....

....

Lesson 2 ★ How are you?

Key vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات:

unwell	مريض – ليس بحالة جيدة	family members	أفراد الأسرة
relative (s)	قريب (أقارب)	crowded	مزدحم
staff	هيئة الموظفين (طاقم العاملين)	injections	حقن
helpful	مفيد	corridor	طرقة – ممر

Other words كلمات أخرى



sick person = patient	شخص مريض	care for	يعتني بـ
alone	بمفرده	bridge	جسر - كوبرى
instead of	بدلاً من	throat	حلق
Don't worry	لا تقلق	playground	ملعب
cut	جرح	bandage	ضمادة
text	نص	feel well	يشعر انه بخير
class	فصل - حصة	southern	جنوبى

Adjectives & opposites صفات وعكسها

responsible	مسئول	irresponsible	غير مسئول
legal	شرعى – قانونى	illegal	غير قانونى
moral	أخلاقى	immoral	غير اخلاقى
polite	مؤدب	impolite	غير مؤدب
possible	ممكن	impossible	غير ممكن
fit	لائق بدنيا	unfit	غير لائق بدنيًا
usual	معتاد	unusual	غير معتاد
regular	منتظم	irregular	غير منتظم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة: Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ	Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة: Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
stay	يقيم - يبقى	stayed	fall	يقع / يسقط	fell
clean	ينظف	cleaned	come in	يدخل	came in
turn	يحول - يلف	turned	teach	يُدرس / يعلم	taught
care	يعتنى بـ	cared	give	يعطى	gave
work	يعمل	worked	become	يصبح	became
treat	يعالج	treated	learn	يتعلم	learned/learnt

Grammar قواعد لغوية

Verb to have

1 have / has مصاب بـ

- يستخدم الفعل have / has للتحدث عن الأمراض بمعنى مصاب بـ كالآتى:

I - you - we - they - اسم جمع → have } + اسم المرض .
He - she - it - اسم مفرد → has

- I have a headache.
- He has a sore throat.

◉ وللنفى نستخدم الصيغة التالية :

I - you - we - they - اسم جمع → don't have } + اسم المرض .
He - she - it - اسم مفرد → doesn't have

- I don't have a headache.
- He doesn't have a toothache.

◉ وللسؤال نستخدم الصيغة التالية :

Do + I - you - we - they - اسم جمع + have } + اسم المرض ?
Does + he - she - it اسم مفرد + have

- Do you have a cold? Yes, I do. / No, I don't.
- Does he have a cold? Yes, he does. / No, he doesn't.

The prefixes (un-ir-il-im) البادئات

2 prefixes البادئات

◉ هناك بعض المقاطع التى تسمى بادئات والتى يمكن اضافتها أول بعض الكلمات حيث تغير المعنى مثال البادئات (un , ir , il , im) والتى تعطى النفى من الكلمة :

◉ و تستخدم هذه البادئات قبل الصفات لاعطاء عكس المعنى للصفة مثل:

usual → unusual	well → unwell

◉ تستخدم البادئة "ir" إذا بدأت الصفة بحرف "r" :

- "ir" ⟶ responsible ⟶ irresponsible

◉ تستخدم البادئة "il" عندما تبدأ الصفة بحرف "l" :

- "il" ⟶ legal ⟶ illegal

◉ تستخدم البادئة "im" اذا بدأت الصفة بحرفى "m , p" :

- "im" ⟶ possible ⟶ impossible
  moral ⟶ immoral



Study the following

1. **Do you have a headache?**
   - هل انت مصاب بـ صداع؟
2. **Does Nader have a headache?**
   - هل نادر مصاب بـ صداع؟
3. **I have a cut on my arm.**
   - لدى جرح فى ذراعى.
4. **Don't worry. I'll clean it and put a bandage on it.**
   - لا تقلق. سوف أنظف الجرح وأضع عليه ضمادة.
5. **The hospital treats patients from all over the country.**
   - تعالج المستشفى المرضى من كل أنحاء البلاد.
6. **It is unusual for a sick person to go to the hospital alone.**
   - من غير المألوف أن يذهب الشخص المريض للمستشفى بمفرده.
7. **Family usually go with their unwell relative.**
   - تذهب الأسرة عادة مع الشخص المريض من أقاربهم.
8. **Some people learn how to change bandages and others learn how to give injections.**
   - يتعلم بعض الناس كيفية تغيير الضمادات والبعض الآخر يتعلم كيفية إعطاء الحقن.

9 The nurses become teachers and the family members become students.

- تصبح الممرضات معلمات ويصبح أفراد الأسرة متعلمين.

10 They have classes to teach the families.

- لديهم حصص (دروس) لتعليم العائلات (الأسر).

11 It also helps the families to care for their relatives.

- تساعد أيضًا الاسر فى الاهتمام بأقاربهم.

12 The staff at this hospital do something special.

- تفعل هيئة الموظفين فى هذه المستشفى شيئًا مميزاً.

1 Listen and read. What's the matter with Ashraf?

استمع وأقرأ. مما يشكو أشرف؟

Tapescript  نص الاستماع

 استمع إلى النص:

Ashraf : Hello, Doctor. I don't feel well.

Doctor : What's the matter, Ashraf? Do you have a headache?

Ashraf : No, Doctor. I don't have a headache.

Doctor : Do you have a stomachache?

Ashraf : No, Doctor. I don't have a stomachache.

Doctor : Do you have a toothache?

Ashraf : No, Doctor. I don't have a toothache. I have ... I have ... Achoo!

Doctor : Oh, dear! You have a cold. Stay home, sleep well, and take this medicine.

2 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences:

انظر إلى الصور. أكمل الجمل:


1 Salma

2 Amir


3 Reem


4 Tarek


5 Lama

1 Amir has a stomachache.

2 .... a toothache.

3 .... a cold.

4 .... an earache.

5 .... a headache.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences or questions:

ضع الكلمات فى ترتيبها الصحيح لتكون جمل أو أسئلة :

1. you / an earache / Do / have / ?

- -

2. sore / a / I / throat / have / .

- -

3. a / has / He / cold / .

- -

4. Nader / have / Does / headache / a / ?

- -

5. he / No, / doesn't / .

- -

4 Read. What part of her body has Nahla hurt?

اقرأ. أى جزء من أجزاء الجسم يؤلم نهلة

Nurse : Come in, Nahla. What's the matter?

Nahla : I fell over in the playground.

Nurse : Oh, dear. Where does it hurt?

Nahla : Here. I have a cut on my arm.

Nurse : Oh, yes, I see. Don't worry. I'll clean it and put a bandage on it.

Nahla : Thank you, nurse.

5 Listen and read. Which country is this hospital in?

استمع واقرأ. أى دولة بها المستشفى؟


استمع إلى النص

A special Hospital

In a hospital in Bangalore[1], a city in southern India, there are many patients. The hospital treats[2] patients from all over the country. With every patient, there are about ten family members[3]. In India, it is unusual for a sick person to go to the hospital alone[4]. Family usually go with their unwell relative[5]. This means that the hospital is often very crowded and busy. But instead of[6] telling family members that they can't visit their sick relatives, the staff at this hospital do something special[7]. They turn a problem into something wonderful. They have classes to teach the family to look after the sick person. For example, some people learn how to change bandages and others learn how to give injections[8].

Arabic Meaning

١- مدينة بانجالور (جنوب الهند)
٢- يعالج
٣- أعضاء
٤- بمفرده
٥- قريب
٦- بدلا من
٧- مميز
٨- حقن

Each afternoon, staff[9] from the hospital turn the corridors into classrooms. The nurses become teachers and the family members - and sometimes even the patients - become the students. Not only does[10] this help the hospital staff, but it also helps the families to care for their relatives when they go home. The staff know that the lessons work because not as many patients return[11] to the hospital now.

٩-هيئة الموظفين
١٠-ليس فقط
١١-يعود

6 Complete the summary of the text with the words in the box:

أكمل ملخص النص بالكلمات من بين الأقواس:

helpful - hospital - injection - staff - patients - relatives

The text is about a ❶ .... in India. It is a very busy place that treats ❷ .... from all over the country. People usually travel to the hospital with many ❸ .... so this means the hospital is always very crowded. At the hospital, the ❹ .... teach the family members how to do useful things, like changing a bandage or giving an ❺ ....

This is ❻ .... for both the staff and the patients.

7 Rewrite these sentences so they mean the opposite. Use the prefix un-:

أعد كتابة الجمل لاعطاء عكس المعنى. استخدم البادئة "un":

1. Tarek is happy.

- -

2. The bridge is safe.

- -

3. Ramy is fit.

- -

8 Look at the chart. Add the prefix ir-, il-, or im- to these words:

ضع البادئات الآتية (ir ,il ,im) للكلمات لاعطاء عكس المعنى:

1. legal - - - - - - - - - - - - - 2. polite - - - - - - - - - - - - -

3. moral - - - - - - - - - - - - - 4. regular - - - - - - - - - - - - -



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. My friend Hazem was .... yesterday.
   a good b ill c happy d excited
2. Hazem's .... hurts.
   a ankle b shoulder c stomach d tooth
3. The .... said to Hazem to stay home.
   a parents b doctor c teacher d friend
4. Hazem took the .... and felt well.
   a food b homework c medicine d water

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Do you .... a toothache? البحيرة - إدارة أبو حمص (2023)
   a put b find c have d meet
2. I can't hear well. I have a/an .... أسيوط - إدارة الفتح (2023)
   a backbone b sore throat c cough d earache
3. It's helpful for patients to learn how to .... injections.
   a give b treat c fall d return
4. Family usually go to hospitals with their .... relatives.
   a well b unwell c impolite d impossible

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار: الدقهلية - إدارة غرب المنصورة (2024)

relatives - treats - cakes - bandages

Dr Omar is from Mansoura. He moved to New York. He works in a special hospital. He ❶ .... patients. He gives them medicine. He helps the families to care for their ❷ .... when they go home. He teaches them how to change ❸ .... and give injections. He loves his job.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة القليوبية - إدارة شبرا الخيمة (2024)

I'm Omar. My uncle is ill in the hospital in Cairo. There are many **patients**. The hospital treats patients from all over the country. The nurses are friendly. Doctors examine patients and give them medicine. My father and I visit him every day. There are many people in the hospital. The hospital is very crowded on Fridays. I hope he will be better.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**patients**" means .... people.
   a well b sick c tail d happy
2. The hospital is in ....
   a Cairo b Giza c Luxor d Aswan

B- Answer the following questions:

3. When is the hospital crowded? ....
4. What do the doctors give patients? ....
5. Who is ill in the hospital? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. have - They - to - classes - teach - the families. .... المنيا - إدارة العدوة (2023)
2. it - does - Where - hurt? ....
3. unwell - go with - usually - Family - their - relative. .... أسيوط - إدارة الفتح (2023)

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. My friend Rana .... (have) an earache.
2. .... (Do) Tarek have a backache? كفر الشيخ - إدارة قلين (2024)
3. .... (Doesn't) worry. I'll clean the cut.
4. The opposite of "moral" is .... (irmoral).

Lesson 3 The power of honey

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



bandage
ضمادة



sunscreen
كريم واقى من الشمس



pills
أقراص دواء



honey and lemon
عسل وليمون



wound
جرح



cut knee
جرح بالركبة

treatment	علاج	bacteria	بكتريا
heal	يلتئم/ يشفى	sunburn	حرق شمس

Other words كلمات أخرى

basbousa	بسبوسة	thousand = 1000	ألف
injures	اصابات	however	بالرغم من / مع ذلك
substance	مادة	medical care	رعاية طبية
recently	حديثًا / مؤخرًا	jar	برطمان
illnesses	أمراض	perhaps	ربما
countries	دول- بلاد	types	أنواع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
enjoy	يستمتع بـ	enjoyed
kill	يقتل	killed
treat	يعالج	treated
heal	يلتئم / يُشفى	healed
damage	يتلف	damaged

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
cut	يجرح	cut
know	يعرف	knew
make	يصنع	made
get better	يتحسن	got better



Study the following

1. I cut my knee last week. جرحت ركبتى الأسبوع الماضى.
2. My grandpa put a bandage on it. وضع جدى ضمادة على الجرح.
3. Did you know that honey isn't only a food? هل تعلم أن العسل ليس بطعام فقط؟
4. Doctors have used honey for thousands of years. استخدم الأطباء العسل لآلآف السنين.
5. It is also used as a treatment for some injuries and illnesses. يستخدم أيضًا كعلاج لبعض الجروح والأمراض.
6. It was first used to treat wounds by Egyptian doctors. تم استخدام (العسل) كعلاج للجروح بواسطة الأطباء المصريين.
7. Some types of honey contain things that can help to kill bacteria. تحتوى بعض أنواع العسل على أشياء تساعد فى قتل البكتريا.
8. You must be careful. يجب عليك أن تكون حذرًا.
9. Honey is the sweetest substance on Earth. العسل هو أكثر مادة مذاقها حلو على وجه الأرض.



Definitions تعريفات

treatment	علاج	medical care to help you get better
wound	جرح	an injury that damage your skin
bacteria	بكتريا	very small things that can make you ill
heal	يلتئم - يشفى	to get better

1 Look at these items. Match them to the problems.

انظر إلى الأشياء وصلها بالمشكلات المناسبة لها.



a. bandage



b. sunscreen

1- a sore throat

2- a cut knee

3- sunburn

4- a headache



c. honey and lemon



d. pills

2 When was the last time you needed an item from Exercise 1? What happened? Tell your partner:

متى أخر مرة أحتجت فيها لأشياء من التمرين رقم ١؟ ماذا حدث؟ أبلغ زميلك.



I cut my knee last week. My grandma put a bandage on it.

I had sunburn so I --

----

3 Read the first paragraph of an article about honey. What two ways does the writer say we use honey in food?

اقرأ الفقرة الأولى فى المقال عن العسل. ما هما الطريقتين التى نستخدم بهما العسل فى الطعام؟


استمع إلى النص:

Do you like honey? Perhaps(1) you enjoy eating it for breakfast. Or maybe you enjoy it in a sweet basbousa? But did you know that honey isn't only a food? It is also used as a treatment(2) for some injuries(3) and illnesses.

In some countries, honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years. It was first used to treat wounds(4) by Egyptian doctors around 5,000 years ago. Recently(5), scientists have tried to find out exactly(6) why honey is so good for healing(7) wounds and treating illnesses.

Scientists know that some types of honey contain(8) things that can help to kill bacteria(9). This helps wounds to heal more quickly. You must be careful, however. The honey that doctors use is a special honey only that is safe to use as a treatment. So, if you have a jar of honey in your cupboard(10), you can mix it with milk to make your cough better, but don't put it on your cut knee!

Arabic Meaning

١- ربما
٢- علاج
٣- اصابات
٤- جروح
٥- حديثا- مؤخرا
٦- بالضبط
٧- التئام
٨- يحتوى على
٩- بكتريا
١٠- خزانة

4 Look at the words in bold in the article. Match them to their meaning

انظر إلى الكلمات بخط سميك فى المقال. صل الكلمة بمعناها.

A	B
1 treatment	a. to get better
2 wound	b. very small things that can make you ill
3 bacteria	c. medical care to help you get better
4 heal	d. an injury that damages your skin

Pronunciation

- ندرس فى هذا الدرس الفرق بين صوتى حرفى الـ (f) , (v).
- ينطق حرف (f) باستخدام الأسنان العليا والشفاه السفلى ولكن بدون اهتزاز الأحبال الصوتية.
- ينطق حرف (v) باستخدام الأسنان العليا والشفاه السفلى مع اهتزاز الأحبال الصوتية.
- وفيما يلى الكلمات التى تحتوى على الصوتين (f) , (v).



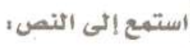


life	حياة
safe	آمن
few	قليل
fine	جميل
fast	سريع
friend	صديق

leave	يغادر
live	يعيش
very	جدًا
save	يحفظ / يوفر
lovely	جميل

1 Complete the words with 'f' or 'v'. Then listen and say:

أكمل الكلمات باستخدام الحرفين (F) أو (V) ثم استمع إلى النص:




استمع إلى النص:



1. I have a pet .... rog.



2. Hany is a .... et.



3. I have a very long scar ....

4. Do you like .... egetables?



5. I really like .... ruit.



6. We like watching tele .... ision.

2 Read, listen, and circle. Then listen again and repeat:

اقرأ واستمع ثم ضع دائرة. استمع مرة أخرى وردد النطق:



استمع إلى الكلمات:

1. van	fan
2. leave	leaf
3. life	live
4. ferry	very
5. few	view
6. safe	save

How to make the /f/ sound:
Rest your top teeth on your lower lip.
Blow, but **don't** use your voice!
How to make the /v/ sound:
Rest your top teeth on your lower lip.
Blow, but **do** use your voice!

3 Say these sentences. Say them again as fast as you can:

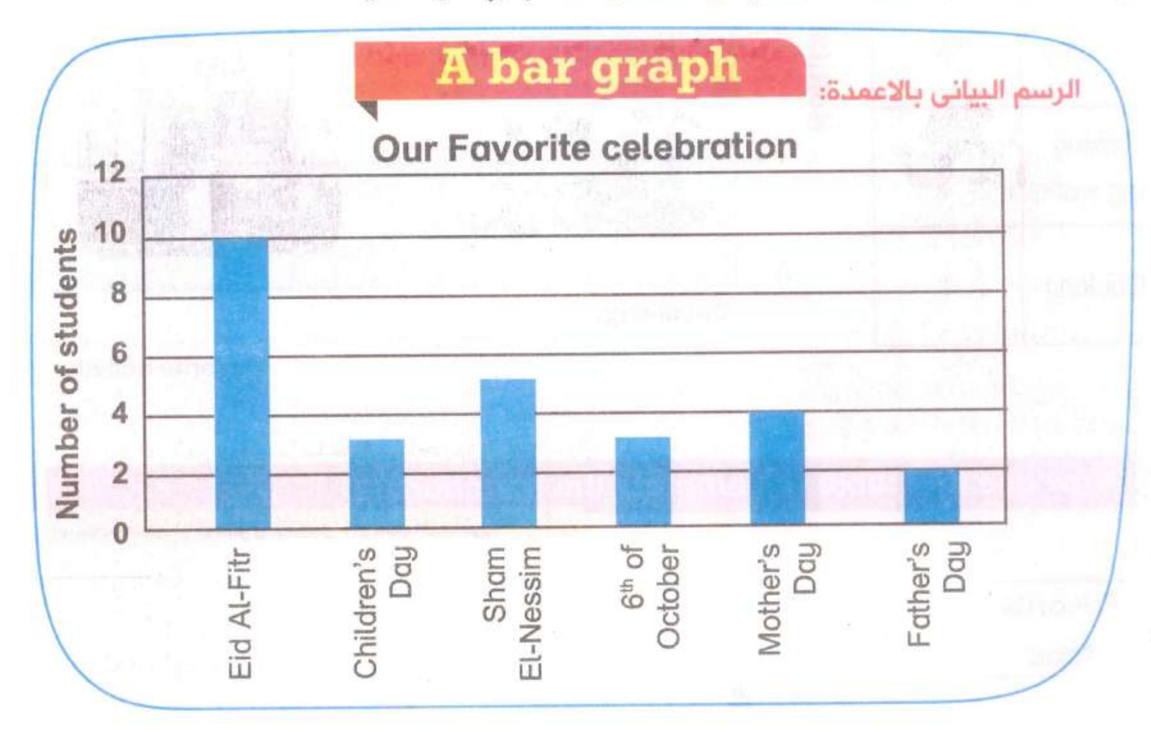
قل هذه الجمل. انطقهم بسرعة على قدر استطاعتك (لتتمكن من التفرقة بين F و V):

1. Is there a fan in the very big van?
2. Leave the lovely leaf on the tree!
3. A few friends saw the very fine view.
4. The ferry is very fast!
5. It's safe to save your money here!



Bar charts

- يستخدم شريط الرسم البيانى لعرض المعلومات على شكل أعمدة وفيما يلى عرض نموذج للرسم البيانى باستخدام الأعمدة حيث يمثل احتفال الطلاب ببعض الأعياد:



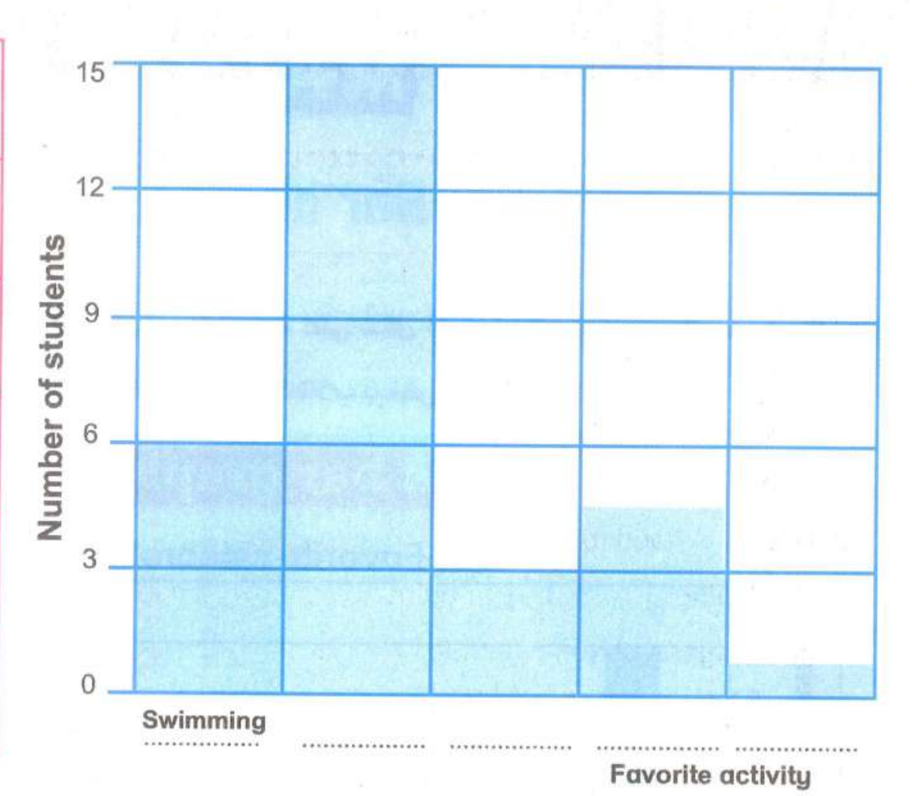
1 Look and read. Then label the bar chart:

انظر واقرأ. اكمل الرسم البيانى:

A bar chart is a way of showing information. Last week, 30 students were asked about their favorite free-time activity to stay healthy. Here is the result of their survey. Which favorite activity was enjoyed by the biggest number of students?

الرسم البيانى هو طريقة لعرض المعلومات. تم سؤال ٣٠ تلميذ الأسبوع الماضي عن النشاط المفضل لديهم فى أوقات فراغهم للمحافظة على صحتهم. وفيما يلى نتيجة استطلاع الرأي. أي من الأنشطة المفضلة لديه أكبر عدد من التلاميذ؟

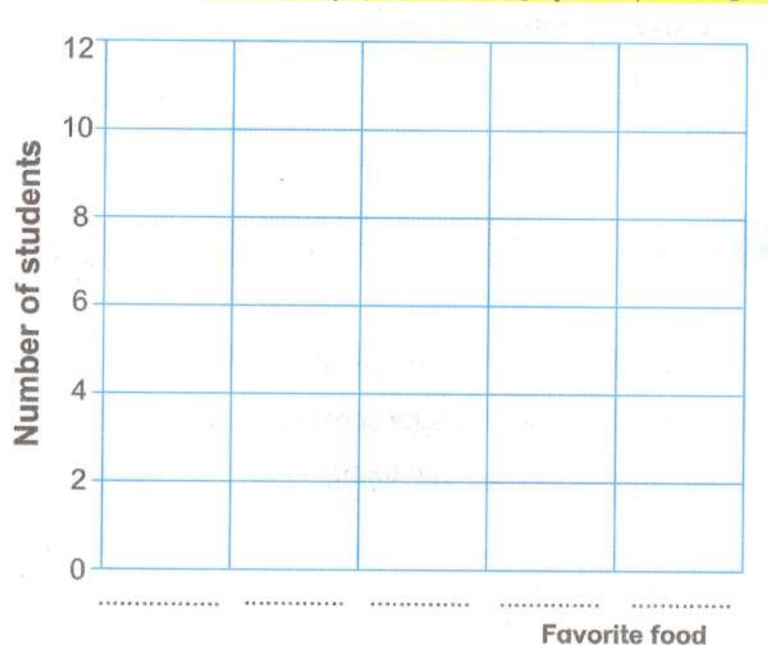
Favorite activity	No. of students
Swimming	6
Football	15
Reading	3
Taking long walks	5
Cooking	1



2 Now use this table to complete the bar chart:

الأن استخدم هذا الجدول لتكمل الرسم البيانى:

Favorite food	No. of students
Ful medames	6
Koshari	6
Kofta	7
Fiteer baladi	9
Shawerma	5





1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Doaa likes .... very much.

   a milk b tea c honey d juice

2. Doaa has honey with ....

   a nuts b lemon c cookies d oranges

3. Honey is good for .... wounds.

   a healing b cutting c making d using

4. Some types of honey can kill ....

   a insects b bees c bacteria d cuts

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

treatment - sunburn - illness - cough

I like honey. It's the sweetest substance on Earth. Doctors used honey for thousand of years. They used it as a ❶ .... for some injuries and ❷ .... If you have a ❸ ...., you can mix honey with milk to be better.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة

I like eating honey for breakfast. We can put honey in some food like basbousa. **It** is also used as a treatment for some injuries. When you cough, you can mix honey with milk. You can drink honey with lemon when you have a sore throat, too. الجيزة إدارة الهرم (2023)

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea in the text is about ....

   a basbousa b milk c honey d lemon

2. We used honey with .... if you have a sore throat.

   a treatment b lemon c milk d basbousa

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What does the underlined word "**It**" refer to? ----------------------
4. How can we use honey? --
5. Summarize the text in one sentence. ---------------------------

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. careful - You - be - must. — الفيوم - إدارة إبشواى (2024)

----

2. ferry - fast - very - is - The .

----

3. honey - to - I - have - like.

----

4. have - Doctors - honey - used - thousands - for - of years. — سوهاج - إدارة سوهاج (2023)

----

5. types - Some - of honey - bacteria - can - kill.

----

6. substance - is - on Earth - Honey - the sweetest.

----

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

do bees make honey --

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Honey

Guiding phrases

kill bacteria - help wound to heal

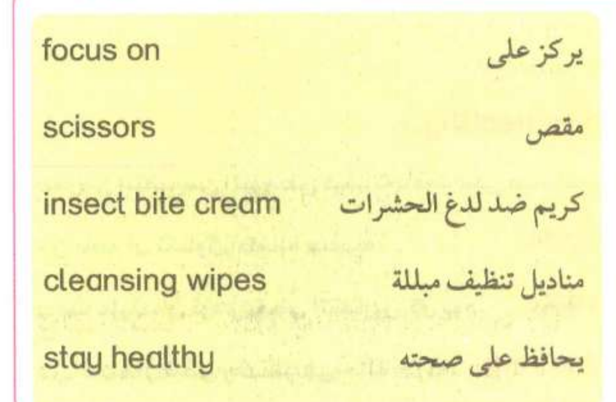
Lessons 4&5 ★ Writing & project

Key vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات:

playing sports	لعب الرياضة
eating vegetables	اكل الخضراوات
reading books	قراءة الكتب
getting enough sleep	النوم بشكل كافى
drinking plenty of water	شرب المياه بكمية كبيرة
visiting a doctor	زيارة الدكتور
balanced diet	نظام غذائى متوازن
presentation	عرض تقديمى
expert (s)	خبير / خبراء
spending time with friends	قضاء وقت مع الأصدقاء

Other words كلمات أخرى



focus on	يركز على
scissors	مقص
insect bite cream	كريم ضد لدغ الحشرات
cleansing wipes	مناديل تنظيف مبللة
stay healthy	يحافظ على صحته
exercise	تمرين – تدريب
in addition to	بالإضافة إلى
medical gloves	قفازات طبية
rubber band	رباط مطاطى
safety pin	دبوس مشبك

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
look after	يعتنى	looked after
exercise	يتمرن	exercised
need	يحتاج	needed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
eat	يأكل	ate
do	يفعل	did
keep	يحافظ	kept
get	يحصل علي	got
spend	يقضى	spent

Language Functions

وظائف لغوية

1 Giving advice اعطاء النصيحة

لاعطاء النصيحة نستخدم أحد الصيغ الآتية :

نستخدم (should) لاعطاء النصيحة بمعنى «ينبغى أن» ويأتي بعدها الفعل فى المصدر :

فاعل (كل الضمائر) + should + (inf) مصدر الفعل.

- You should eat healthy foods.

2 It's important

وهناك صيغة أخرى لاعطاء النصيحة باستخدام "It's important to" من المهم أن ....

It's important to + inf مصدر الفعل.

- It's important to get enough sleep.

3 One of the best ways

وهناك صيغة أخرى للنصيحة وهى :

One of the best ways to + inf مصدر الفعل. .... من أفضل الطرق أن

- One of the best ways to stay healthy is to spend time with your friends.

Study the following

1. **My presentation today is about staying healthy.**
   العرض التقديمى اليوم عن كيف تحافظ على صحتك.
2. **It's really important to eat healthy foods.** من المهم أن تتناول أطعمة صحية.
3. **You should do some exercise every day.** يجب عليك أن تؤدى بعض التمارين كل يوم.
4. **It's very important to keep your body moving.** من المهم أن تبقى جسمك فى حالة حركة.
5. **Playing sports at school or with friends is a good way to exercise.**
   لعب الرياضة فى المدرسة أو مع الأصدقاء طريقة جيدة للتمرين.
6. **It's important to get enough sleep.** من المهم أن تنام بشكل كافى.
7. **Experts think you should get between eight and nine hours of sleep every night.**
   يعتقد الخبراء بأنك تحتاج من ثمانية إلى تسعة ساعات نوم كل ليلة.
8. **You should make time to focus on being happy.** يجب عليك أن تجعل وقتك سعيدًا.
9. **Spending time with your family and friends is a great way to do this.**
   قضاء وقت مع الأسرة والأصدقاء طريقة رائعة للسعادة.

1 Read Asma's presentation. Check (√) the things that she talks about:

اقرأ العرض التقديمى «لأسما». ضع علامة √ على الأشياء التى تحدثت عنها:

My list of healthy things to do

playing sport	☐
eating vegetables	☐
reading books	☐
getting enough sleep	☐
visiting a doctor	☐
spending time with friends	☐
drinking plenty of water	☐

استمع إلى النص:

My presentation(1) today is about staying healthy. It is really(2) important to eat healthy foods like fruit and vegetables and to have a balanced diet(3). There are lots of other things that we can do to look after our health.

You should do some exercise every day. It's very important to keep your body moving(4). Playing sport at school or with friends is a good way to exercise.

Another thing you can do is to go to bed early. It's important to(5) get enough sleep. Experts think you should get between eight and nine hours of sleep every night.

In addition(6) to this, one of the best ways to stay healthy is to spend time with your friends. It's not only your body that you need to keep healthy, you should make time to focus on(7) being happy, too. Spending time with your family and friends is a great(8) way to do this.

Arabic Meaning

١- عرض تقديمى
٢-بالفعل
٣- نظام غذائى متوازن
٤- يحافظ على حركة الجسم
٥- من المهم أن
٦- بالإضافة إلى
٧- يركز
٨- رائع

2 Read Asma's presentation again. Complete the sentences:

اقرأ مقال «أسما» مرة أخرى. أكمل الجمل.

1. Asma says it's important to eat ....
2. Asma says that .... is a good way to exercise .
3. You should sleep between .... hours every night.
4. Spending time with your friends is good for your ....

3 Asma's class completed a table about staying healthy. Look at the table. Complete it for you:

اكمل فصل «أسما» جدول عن كيف تحافظ على صحتك. انظر إلى الجدول. أكمل الجدول الخاص بك:

Key: 🙂🙂🙂 = very good 🙂🙂 = OK ☹ = could do better

Eating healthy foods	☹
Getting enough sleep	🙂🙂
Drinking plenty of water	🙂🙂🙂
Playing sport	🙂🙂🙂
Spending time with friends	🙂🙂

Eating healthy foods	
Getting enough sleep	
Drinking plenty of water	
Playing sport	
Spending time with friends	

4 Work in groups. Discuss and decide:

اعمل فى مجموعات وناقش وقرر:

You are going on a school trip to the desert. Your class is responsible for packing the firs-aid kit. Look at the objects below. In groups, discuss which four items you want to take and why these are the most useful.

Take bandages in case someone cuts their knee.

- سوف تذهب في رحلة مدرسية فى الصحراء. وفصلك مسئول عن تعبئة صندوق الإسعافات الأولية. انظر إلى الأشياء بالأسفل. ناقش فى مجموعات أى من هذه الأشياء سوف توضع فى صندوق الإسعافات الأولية. ولماذا هذه الأشياء مفيدة؟



bandages

sunscreen



scissors



insect bite cream



cleansing wipes



medical gloves



rubber bands



safety pins



soap



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I need ...., I get sunburn.

   a scissors b soap c sunscreen d bandages

2. It's important to have a .... diet. (الإسكندرية - إدارة الجمرك (2023))

   a balanced b irregular c unhealthy d impossible

3. What do you do to .... healthy? (المنوفية - إدارة أشمون (2023))

   a sleep b stay c spend d make

4. We should take .... in case someone cuts their knee.

   a sunscreen b bandages c honey d injections

5. Playing sport at school is a good way to .... (الإسكندرية - إدارة المنتزة (2024))

   a sleep b exercise c look d bake

6. Drinking plenty of water keeps your body working ....

   a ill b well c will d bad

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

time - plenty - hours - focus

It's very important to have a balanced diet. We should eat healthy foods. We should do some exercise every day. We should sleep between eight or nine ❶ .... every night. We can spend ❷ .... with our friends and family and make time to ❸ .... on being happy, too.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. should - do - You - exercise - some. (الدقهلية - إدارة غرب المنصورة (2023))

   ....

2. important - It's - enough - get - sleep - to. (الإسماعيلية - إدارة الإسماعيلية (2023))

   ....

3. do - What - stay - do - healthy - you - to?

   ....

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4. sport - a good - Playing - is - to exercise - way.

---

5. to - important - It's - eat - food - healthy. الجيزة - إدارة الحوامدية (2024)

---

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. You .... (should to) eat healthy foods.
2. .... (Drank) plenty of water every day.
3. It's very important to .... (kept) your body moving.
4. You should .... (sleeps) between 8 and 9 hours every night.
5. It's important .... (for) exercise every day. المنوفية - إدارة شبين الكوم (2024)

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

you should eat vegetables ....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Keeping healthy

Guiding questions:

1- What do you do to stay healthy?
2- Who should you spend your time with?

Review

Illnesses الأمراض


backache
ألم بالظهر


cold
برد


sore throat
التهاب بالحلق


headache
صداع


earache
ألم بالأذن


toothache
ألم بالأسنان


cough
كحة


cut knee
جرح بالركبة



sunscreen
كريم واقى من الشمس


pills
أقراص دواء


honey and lemon
عسل وليمون


wound
جرح


bandage
ضمادة

unwell	مريض– ليس بحالة جيدة
relative (s)	قريب (أقارب)
staff	هيئة الموظفين
helpful	مفيد
treatment	علاج
heal	يلتئم/ يشفى
playing sports	لعب الرياضة
eating vegetables	اكل الخضراوات
reading books	قراءة الكتب
getting enough sleep	النوم بشكل كافى
visiting a doctor	زيارة الدكتور

balanced diet	نظام غذائى متوازن
family members	أفراد الأسرة
crowded	مزدحم
injections	حقن
corridor	طرقة – ممر
bacteria	بكتريا
sunburn	حرق شمس
presentation	عرض تقديمى
spending time with friends	قضاء وقت مع الأصدقاء
drinking plenty of water	شرب المياه بكمية كبيرة
expert (s)	خبير / خبراء

ADJECTIVES & OPPOSITES صفات وعكسها

responsible	مسئول	irresponsible	غير مسئول
legal	شرعى - قانونى	illegal	غير قانونى
moral	أخلاقى	immoral	غير اخلاقى
polite	مؤدب	impolite	غير مؤدب
possible	ممكن	impossible	غير ممكن
fit	لائق بدنيا	unfit	غير لائق بدنيًا
usual	معتاد	unusual	غير معتاد
regular	منتظم	irregular	غير منتظم

Pronunciation

- لاحظ الفرق بين الصوتين /f/ و /v/:

F /f/ sound


frog ضفدع


scarf وشاح/كوفية


fan مروحة


fruit فاكهة

V /v/ sound


vet طبيب بيطرى


vegetables خضراوات


television تلفاز


van شاحنة مغلقة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
hope	يأمل	hoped
use	يستخدم	used
turn	يحول - يلف	turned
care	يعتنى بـ	cared
treat	يعالج	treated
kill	يقتل	killed
heal	يلتئم / يُشفى	healed
damage	يتلف	damaged

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
have / has	مصاب بـ - يملك	had
hurt	يؤلم	hurt
fall	يقع / يسقط	fell
teach	يُدرس / يعلم	taught
give	يعطى	gave
become	يصبح	became
cut	يجرح	cut
know	يعرف	knew
get better	يتحسن	got better



Grammar — قواعد لغوية

Verb to have

1 have / has مصاب بـ

- يستخدم الفعل have / has للتحدث عن الأمراض بمعنى مصاب بـ كالآتى:

I - you - we - they - اسم جمع → have	+ اسم المرض .
He - she - it - اسم مفرد → has	

- I have a headache.
- He has a sore throat.

◉ وللنفى نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

I - you - we - they - اسم جمع → don't have	+ اسم المرض .
He - she - it - اسم مفرد → doesn't have	

- I don't have a headache.
- He doesn't have a toothache.

◉ وللسؤال نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

Do + I - you - we - they - اسم جمع + have	+ اسم المرض ?
Does + he - she - it - اسم مفرد + have	

- Do you have a cold? Yes, I do. / No, I don't.
- Does he have a cold? Yes, he does. / No, he doesn't.

The prefixes (un - ir - il - im) البادئات

2 prefixes البادئات

- تستخدم هذه البادئات قبل الصفات لإعطاء عكس المعنى للصفة، مثل:

polite → impolite	well → unwell
regular → irregular	legal → illegal

- My friend Gamal is unwell.
- This boy is shouting. He's impolite.

Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

Lesson 1

A toothache

1 I had a toothache yesterday. I told my father. My father took me to the dentist. The dentist gave me some medicine. I took the medicine. I felt better. My father told me not to eat many sweets.

Lesson 3

Honey

2 Honey is very useful. I enjoy eating it for breakfast. Honey contains things that can help to kill bacteria. It helps wound to heal more quickly. When you have a sore throat, you can have honey with lemon.

Lessons 4 & 5

Keeping healthy

3 It's important to keep healthy. We should eat healthy foods and have a balanced diet. We should drink plenty of water and do sports. Spending time with family and friends to be happy.

Test - Unit 8

A cold

4 I had a cold last week. I didn't feel better. I went to the doctor's. The doctor told me to stay home. The doctor gave me some pills. I took the pills. I felt better today. I stayed home for three days.

Al-Azhar Test

اختبار خاص بالأزهر الشريف



A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I get up at .... o'clock. **(six - seven - eight)**
2. I have my .... with my parents. **(lunch - breakfast - dinner)**
3. I like .... **(apples - honey - oranges)**

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ و أكمل المحادثة:

have - matter - doctor's - going

A : Where are you ❶ ....?

B : I'm going to the ❷ ....

A : What's the ❸ ....?

B : I ❹ .... a sore throat.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the questions: أقرا و اجب عن الأسئلة:

Yesterday, Gamal went to the club. Gamal was very sad. His friend Samir hurt his ankle at football practice. His friend Yasser had an earache from swimming. They went to the hospital. Gamal was worried about my friends.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. Where did Gamal go yesterday? ....
2. Was Gamal happy at the club? ....

B - Choose the correct answer:

3. His friend Samir hurt his .... at football practice **(foot - arm - ankle)**
4. His friend Yasser had an earache from .... **(football - swimming - volleyball)**
5. Gamal was worried about his .... **(brothers - sisters - friends)**

D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Do you .... an earache?

a have   b has   c had

2. I have a pet ....

a lion   b frog   c elephant

3. No, I .... have a sore throat.

a does   b do   c don't

4. Doctors work in a ....

a school   b hospital   c shop

5. What .... the matter, Wael?

a am   b are   c is

5 Read and reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اقرأ و اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملا صحيحة:

1. hurt - his - Tarek - ankle - yesterday.

....

2. stomach - Does - hurt - your?

....

3. worried - my - I'm - friends - about.

....

4. scarf - a very - I - have - long.

....

5. fell - in - over - the playground - He.

....

Test on Unit 8



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. It's .... to eat healthy food.

a irregular b possible c illegal d important

2. We should do some .... with friends.

a exercise b food c sleep d homework

3. Sleeping for .... hours is good for health.

a five b four c eight d six

4. Playing sports at .... is a good way to exercise.

a school b street c home d hospital

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I'm .... about my unwell friends. الشرقية - إدارة ههيا (2024)

a unsafe b polite c worried d unfit

2. .... are very small things that can make you ill. بنى سويف - إدارة بنى سويف (2023)

a Bacteria b Doctors c Cupboards d Knees

3. I bought a long .... for my mother to wear. القليوبية - إدارة بنها (2024)

a fan b scarf c ferry d van

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

earache - care - stay - practice

My brother Hany didn't go to school yesterday. He was ill. He had an (1) .... from swimming. He went to swimming (2) .... last Monday. My father took Hany to the doctor. The doctor told Hany to (3) .... home and took some medicine.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة البحيرة - إدارة بندر دمنهور (2023)

It is important to eat healthy foods like fruits and vegetables to have a balanced diet. There are lots of things that we can do to look after our health. You should do some exercise every day. It is very important to keep your body moving. Playing sport at school or with friends is a good way to exercise. Go to bed early. It is important to get enough sleep. Experts think you should get between eight and nine hours of sleep every night. You should make time to focus on being happy. Spending time with your family and friends is a great way to do this.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Playing sport at school is a good way to ------------ .
   a sleep b look c write d exercise
2. The main idea of the text is about "------------".
   a How to play football b How to be fast
   c How to be healthy d How to be happy

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Why is it important to eat healthy foods? ------------------------
4. How many hours should you sleep at night? ------------------------
5. Summarize the text in one sentence. ------------------------

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. stomach - **Does** - your - hurt? ------------------------
2. doesn't - **My** - a - mother - toothache - have. ------------------------ الدقهلية - إدارة غرب المنصورة (2023)

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Hoda ---------- (**have**) a sore throat last week. الجيزة - إدارة أوسيم (2023)
2. ---------- (**Are**) you have a stomachache? المنوفية - إدارة أشمون (2023)

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- do you have a sore throat ------------------------
- the doctor gave me some medicne ------------------------

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

A cold

cold - medicine



My society

My favorite animal

حيواني المفضل



Objectives of the Unit

أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research and write about animals.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويعمل بحث ويكتب عن الحيوانات.

2. Listen and read about a trip to a wildlife park.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ عن رحلة إلى حديقة الحياة البرية.

3. Talk about ability now and in the past.

- يتحدث الطالب عن القدرة الآن وفى الماضى.

4. Learn how to say /w/ and /v/ sounds.

- يتعلم الطالب كيفية نطق حرفي /w/ و/v/.

5. Write an email about an unusual animal.

- يكتب الطالب إيميل عن حيوان غير مألوف (غريب).

6. Research and make an infographic about animals in a habitat.

- يقوم الطالب بعمل بحث ومخطط معلومات بياني عن حيوانات في بيئة ما.

Lesson 1 ★ Wildlife

Key vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات:


panda
الباندا


bat
خفاش


kangaroo
حيوان الكونغر


lion
أسد

Animals
الحيوانات




penguin
بطريق


dolphin
دولفين


snail حلزون


parrot ببغاء

ADJECTIVES صفات

beautiful	جميل	strong	قوي
colorful	زاهي / كثير الألوان	wonderful	رائع
friendly	ودود / أليف	awesome	مذهل
different	مختلف	sweet	جميل
amazing	مدهش	cool	رائع / جذاب

Other words كلمات أخرى

wildlife park	حديقة الحياة البرية	Australia	استراليا
shell	قوقعة	Africa	أفريقيا
sleep upside down	ينام بالمقلوب	China	الصين
snow	جليد	the ocean	المحيط
ice	ثلج	bamboo	نبات الخيزران
fridge	ثلاجة	pouch	جراب/ كيس في أسفل بطن الكونغر
the rainforest	غابة مطيرة	the dark	الظلام
a bit sad	حزين قليلاً	rabbit	ارنب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض
jump	يقفز	jumped
live	يعيش	lived
stay	يمكث	stayed
want	يريد	wanted
enjoy	يستمتع	enjoyed
repeat	يردد	repeated

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض
fly	يطير	flew
swim	يعوم	swam
sleep	ينام	slept
hide	يختبئ	hid
feed	يطعم	fed
see	يرى	saw

Study the following



1. I had a wonderful day out yesterday with my family.
   - لقد قضيت يومًا رائعًا في الخارج مع عائلتي بالأمس.
2. I went to the new wildlife park.
   - ذهبت إلى حديقة الحياة البرية الجديدة.
3. The kangaroos were interesting, too.
   - كانت حيوانات الكونغر مثيرة للاهتمام أيضًا.
4. When they are little, they can sit inside their mom's pouch.
   - عندما يكونوا صغارًا ، يجلسون داخل جراب أمهم.
5. We said some words for them to repeat.
   - قلنا لهم بعض الكلمات ليرددوها.
6. They were all hiding and I couldn't see them in the dark.
   - كانوا جميعًا مختبئون ولم استطع رؤيتهم فى الظلام.
7. Could you go near the lions?
   - هل استطعت أن تذهب بالقرب من الأسود؟
8. They were in a special place inside.
   - كانوا (البطريق) في مكان خاص بالداخل.

9 They can swim so well. - يمكنهم السباحة جيدًا.

10 I have a shell. I don't have legs or arms. - لدي قوقعة ليس لدي أرجل أو أيدي.

11 I live in Australia. I jump on two legs. - أعيش في استراليا. اقفز على رجلين.

12 I fly at night. I sleep upside down on trees. - اطير في الليل. أنام بالمقلوب على الأشجار.

13 I swim in a group with my family in the ocean. - اسبح في مجموعة مع عائلتي في المحيط.

1 Listen and read. Then say the words:

استمع واقرأ. ثم قل الكلمات:

1 
kangaroo

2 panda

3 
bat

4 
lion

5 
penguin

6 
dolphin

7 
snail

8 
parrot

2 Read the clues. Write the correct animals:

اقرأ مفاتيح حل الألغاز. اكتب الحيوانات الصحيحة:

1. I live in the garden. I have a shell. I don't have legs or arms. snail
2. I live in Australia. I jump on two legs. kangaroo
3. I fly at night. I sleep upside down on trees. _______
4. I live on ice and snow. I'm black and white. I can swim, but I can't fly. _______
5. I am a bird. I am very beautiful and colorful. I live in the rainforest. _______
6. I live in Africa. I'm a very big cat. I am very strong. _______
7. I am very friendly. I swim in a group with my family in the ocean. _______
8. I live in China. I eat bamboo. I'm big, and black and white. _______

3 Read. Where did Ramez go yesterday?

اقرأ. أين ذهب رامز بالأمس؟





استمع إلى النص:

Ramez : Hi! I had a wonderful day out yesterday with my family.

Ayman : Where did you go?

Ramez : I went to the new wildlife park(1) - it was awesome(2)!

Ayman : What did you see? Could you go near the lions?

Ramez : No, we stayed in the car. But we could see them through the trees. The kangaroos were interesting, too. When they are little, they can sit inside their mom's pouch(3) - it's so sweet!

Ayman : What birds did you see?

Ramez : Lots, but my favorites were the parrots. They were so beautiful and they could talk! We said some words for them to repeat!

Ayman : What about animals that like the cold? Did you see any?

Ramez : Yes, penguins! They were in a special(4) place inside. It was cold, like a fridge(5). We fed them some fish! I love penguins - they can swim so well and they look so cool!

Ayman : Wow! Was there anything you wanted to see but couldn't?

Ramez : The bats. I'm doing a project on bats at school, so I really wanted to see them! But they were all hiding(6) and I couldn't see them in the dark!

Ayman : Oh well, it sounds(7) amazing! I've got to feed my rabbit now - that's the most wildlife I'll see today!

Arabic Meaning

١- حديقة الحياة البرية
٢- رائع
٣- جراب الكنجر
٤- خاص
٥- ثلاجة
٦- مختبئون
٧- يبدو

4 Complete the summary with the words in the box:

أكمل الملخص بكلمات من القائمة:

project - sad - parrots - ~~park~~ - enjoyed - lions

Yesterday, Ramez went to a wildlife ❶ ....park.... with his family. He ❷ .... it very much. They saw lots of different animals like ❸ ...., kangaroos, and penguins. He saw his favorite birds, the ❹ .... He was a bit ❺ .... because he didn't see the bats and he's doing a ❻ .... on them at school.



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. My uncle has a ....

a parrot b rabbit c fish d snail

2. The parrot's name is ....

a Tingo b Pingo c Mingo d Singo

3. The parrot can .... what we say.

a walk b jump c take d repeat

4. The parrot has a beautiful ....

a beak b head c mouth d nose

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A .... swim in a group with his family in the ocean. الإسكندرية - إدارة برج العرب (2023)

a parrot b dolphin c kangaroo d bat

2. The .... lives on ice. It can swim, but it can't fly. المنوفية - إدارة مدينة السادات (2023)

a snail b parrot c penguin d kangaroo

3. When .... are little, they can sit inside their mom's pouch.

a lions b parrots c kangaroos d penguins

4. A .... has a shell and doesn't have legs or arms. القليوبية - إدارة بنها (2023)

a snail b dolphin c bat d panda

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

fed - shell - parrots - awesome

I'm doing a project at school about wildlife animals so, I went to a wildlife park with my family. We saw lots of animals like penguins, parrots and kangaroos. I watched the little kangaroos sat inside their mom's pouch. My favorite birds were the ❶ .... They were ❷ .... and could talk. I loved penguins and ❸ ...... them some fish.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. upside - down - **Bats** - sleep - can. الجيزة - إدارة أوسيم (2023)

----

2. see - birds - **What** - you - did?

----

3. can - **Kangaroos** - very - high - jump. القليوبية - إدارة غرب شبرا (2023)

----

4. yesterday - go - Ramez - **Where** - did?

----

5. **Penguins** - very - can - swim - fast. الغربية - إدارة السنطة (2024)

----

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I can swim, but I .... (**can**) fly. الإسكندرية - إدارة برج العرب (2023)
2. I've got to .... (**feeding**) my rabbit now.
3. I .... (**have**) a wonderful day out yesterday.
4. Snails .... (**has**) shells. المنوفية - إدارة أشمون (2024)

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

i couldn't see bats in the dark ---

7 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

بنى سويف - إدارة بنى سويف (2023)

مجاب آخر الوحدة

My trip to a wildlife park

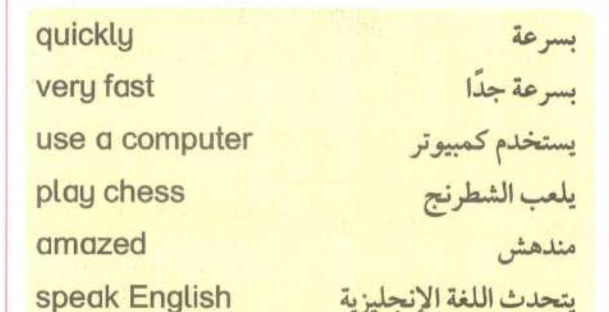
Guiding questions

1- What did you see?
2- How did you go there?

Lesson 2 Part 1 What could you do?

Key vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات:



Other words كلمات أخرى

quickly	بسرعة	busy	مشغول
very fast	بسرعة جدًا	German	اللغة الألمانية
use a computer	يستخدم كمبيوتر	Italian	اللغة الإيطالية
play chess	يلعب الشطرنج	French	اللغة الفرنسية
amazed	مندهش	France	فرنسا
speak English	يتحدث اللغة الإنجليزية		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
speak	يتحدث	spoke
fly	يطير	flew
run	يجرى	ran
drive	يقود	drove
take	يأخذ	took
ride	يركب	rode
read	يقرأ	read
swim	يعوم	swam



Study the following

1. Birds can fly. - تستطيع الطيور أن تطير.
2. Lions can run very fast. - تستطيع الأسود الجري بسرعة جدًا.
3. Bats can sleep upside down on trees. - تنام الخفافيش بالمقلوب على الأشجار.
4. Snails can live in shells. - تعيش الحلزونات في قواقع.

Grammar
قواعد لغوية

1 للتعبير عن: استطاعة فعل شيء في الحاضر نستخدم:

فاعل + can يستطيع أن + inf فعل فى المصدر.

- Birds can fly.
- I can play basketball.

فى النفي نستخدم:

فاعل + can't لا يستطيع أن + inf فعل فى المصدر.

- Pandas can't drive a car.
- I can't speak Italian.

فى السؤال نستخدم: Can + فاعل + inf فعل فى المصدر?

- Can you play tennis?

لاحظ لا نضع (to) بعد can / can't

2 للتعبير عن: استطاعة فعل شيء في الماضي نستخدم:

فى الاثبات: فاعل + could + inf فعل فى المصدر.

- I could run fast last year.

فى النفى: فاعل + couldn't + inf فعل فى المصدر.

- I couldn't take the bus so I had to walk.

فى السؤال: Could + فاعل + inf فعل فى المصدر?

- Could you play the piano last year?

لاحظ لا نضع (to) بعد could / couldn't

ويمكن استخدام when مع could / couldn't كما يلى:

When عندما + فاعل + ماضى بسيط, + فاعل + {could / couldn't} + inf فعل في المصدر.

- When I lived in France, I could speak French.
- OR: I could speak French when I lived in France.

لاحظ استخدام (,) comma إذا بدأنا الجملة بـ When.

Could + فاعل + inf فعل في المصدر + when + فاعل + الماضي البسيط?

- Could you ride a bike when you were three?

1 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 birds	a. can live in shells
2 lions	b. can sleep upside down on trees
3 snails	c. can fly
4 bats	d. can run very fast

2 Write can or can't: اكتب يستطيع أو لا يستطيع:

1. Bats ......can...... fly very fast.
2. Snails .... move quickly.
3. Parrots .... fly.
4. Pandas .... drive a car.

3 Write could or couldn't: اكتب استطاع أو لم يستطع:

1. When I was two, I couldn't use a computer.
2. I .... read when I was one.
3. My sister .... play chess when she was five, but she .... when she was eight.
4. My cousin .... run when he was a baby.
5. I .... swim when I was a baby, and everyone was amazed.
6. .... you speak English when you were five?

4 Circle the correct word: ضع دائرة حول الكلمة الصحيحة:

1. I couldn't say anything in German last year, but now I ....

   a can b can't c could

2. Last year, he .... run very quickly, but now he can.

   a can't b could c couldn't

3. .... you play the piano when you were a child?

   a Can b Could c Couldn't

4. Sorry, I .... help you with your homework. I'm busy.

   a can b can't c could

Lesson 2 Part 2 The travelers and the tree

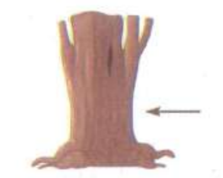
Key vocabulary











nuts	exhausted	branch of a tree	trunk of a tree
مكسرات	منهك (متعب جدًا)	فرع شجرة	جذع شجرة

Other words كلمات أخرى



wide	واسع – عريض	shade	ظل
famous	مشهور	traders	تجار
shelter	مأوى	meeting point	مكان للتجمع (للقاء)
rest	يستريح / راحة	breeze	نسيم (رياح خفيفة)
comfortable	مريح	useless	عديم الفائدة
save	ينقذ	ungrateful	ناكر الجميل
angry	غاضب	unkind	غير عطوف

Definitions تعريفات

a breeze	نسيم	a little wind
useless	عديم الفائدة	we can't use it
ungrateful	ناكر للجميل	don't thank others for doing something good
comfortable	مريح	it's nice to sit on or wear
a meeting point	نقطة التقاء/تجمع	somewhere where people meet



Study the following

1. **Once there was a very big old tree in a hot, dry land.**

- كان يوجد شجرة كبيرة الحجم والعمر فى يوم حار وجاف.

2. **Its trunk was very wide and it had many green branches.**

- كان جذعها (الشجرة) عريض جدًا ولديها الكثير من الفروع الخضراء.

3 It was a meeting point for traders. - كانت نقطة (مكان) لقاء للتجار.

4 They enjoyed the shade and the cool breeze. - استمتعوا بالظل والنسيم الرائع.

5 As they were exhausted, they soon fell asleep.

- بمجرد أن شعروا بالتعب الشديد، خلدوا إلى النوم في الحال.

6 There are no nuts or fruit on its branches. - لا يوجد مكسرات أو فاكهة في فروعها.

7 You came to me feeling hot and tired. - أتيت إلى وأنت تشعر بالحر والإرهاق.

8 I gave you a cool, comfortable place to sleep and I probably saved your life.

- أعطيتك مكان مريح ورائع للنوم وربما أنقذت حياتك.

9 The travelers looked around them and saw the tree was correct and felt very sorry.

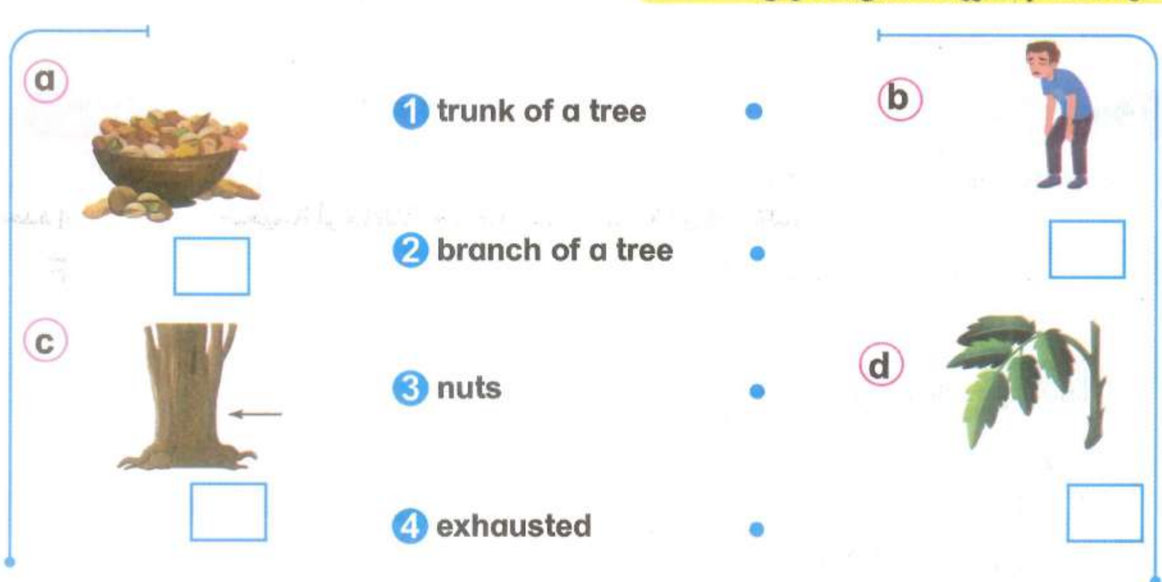
- نظر المسافرون حولهم ورأوا أن الشجرة على حق وشعروا بالندم.

10 It's important to give value to the small things in our lives.

- من المهم أن نعطى قيمة للأشياء الصغيرة فى حياتنا.

1 Match the words to the photos. Check in a dictionary:

صل الكلمات بالصور. تأكد من القاموس:





2 Read and listen to a fable by Aesop. Why was the tree angry?

اقرأ واستمع إلى اسطورة خرافية كتبها "إيسوب". لماذا كانت الشجرة غاضبة؟

Tapescript نص الاستماع





استمع إلى النص:

Once there was a very big old tree in a hot, dry land. It had lived for many years. Its trunk was very wide and it had many green branches[1]. It was famous because it was the only tree where it lived, and it gave shelter[2] and rest[3] to hundreds of travelers as they moved across the country.

It was near four towns and many villages in its area[4] and was a meeting point[5] for traders.

One day two travelers, who were new to the area, were walking across the field and saw the tree. It was a very hot, dry day and one of them said, "Let's stop under that tree, where there's some shade[6]." "That's a very good idea," said his friend. They rested under the tree and drank some water. They then enjoyed the shade and the cool breeze[7]. As they were exhausted[8], they soon fell asleep.

When they woke up[9], one of the travelers felt hungry. Neither of them[10] had any food in their bags so they looked up at the branches of the tree. "This tree is useless[11]," one of them said. "It has no food for us - there are no nuts[12] or fruit on its branches." "But it has shade and it's keeping us cool," said the other.

But the tree heard the first traveler's words and it was angry. "How can you be so ungrateful[13]?" It said, "You came to me feeling hot and tired. I gave you a cool, comfortable[14] place to sleep and I probably[15] saved[16] your life. Look, there is no other cool place to sleep near here. "The travelers looked around them and saw the tree was correct[17] and felt very sorry.

Arabic Meaning

١- افرع
٢- مأوى
٣- راحة
٤- منطقة
٥- مكان للتجمع
٦- ظل
٧- نسيم
٨- منهك
٩- استيقظ
١٠- ولا واحد منهم
١١- عديم الفائدة
١٢- مكسرات
١٣- ناكر الجميل
١٤- مريح
١٥- من المحتمل
١٦- انقذ
١٧- صحيح

3 Decide if the sentences are True (T) or False (F). Correct the false sentences in your notebook:

حدد إذا كانت الجمل صحيحة أو خاطئة. صحح الجمل الخاطئة فى كراستك:

1. The tree was in a field with many other trees. F
2. It was a cool, rainy day.
3. The travelers were tired.
4. The travelers were thirsty.
5. Both the travelers were ungrateful to the tree.
6. In the end the travelers were sad about being unkind to the tree.

4 Look at the underlined words in the story. Circle the correct definition:

انظر إلى الكلمات التي تحتها خط في القصة. وضع دائرة حول التعريف الصحيح:

1. A breeze is a little **wind** / **lake.**
2. When something is useless, we **can / can't** use it.
3. When someone is ungrateful, they **thank / don't thank** others for doing something good.
4. When something is comfortable, it's **nice / not nice** to sit on or wear.
5. A meeting point is somewhere where people **leave / meet**.

5 Work in pairs. Answer the questions.

اعمل في ثنائيات. اجب عن الأسئلة:

1. **What do you think the moral of the story is?**

في رأيك ما الدرس الأخلاقي في القصة؟

a It's important to plant lots of trees.

b It's important to give value to the small things in our lives.

c It's important to take food when you travel.

2. **What do you think the travelers said to the tree at the end?**

في رأيك ماذا قال المسافرين للشجرة في النهاية؟

6 Work in pairs. Answer the questions. Use the photos below to help you with your answers:

اعمل في ثنائيات. أجب عن الأسئلة. استخدام الصور بالأسفل لتساعدك في إجابتك.

1. Why are trees important for humans?

- -

2. Why are trees important for animals?

- -

3. Why is it important to plant trees?

- -








1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Hisham could .... at five.
   a talk　b sleep　c move　d run
2. Nabil is two years .... than Hisham.
   a bigger　b older　c younger　d longer
3. Hisham can use a computer and play ....
   a tennis　b chess　c games　d football
4. Now, Nabil can .... and sing.
   a swim　b play　c read　d speak

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. He was ...., so he fell asleep. بنى سويف - إدارة بنى سويف (2024)
   a exhausted　b ungrateful　c unlucky　d impossible
2. A breeze is a little .... المنوفية - إدارة أشمون (2023)
   a rain　b wind　c lake　d light
3. Trees give us .... and shelter. الجيزة - إدارة الحوامدية (2024)
   a shade　b water　c milk　d meat
4. Last year, he couldn't .... chess, but now he can. القليوبية - إدارة غرب شبرا (2023)
   a speak　b play　c ride　d feel
5. Nabil is ...., he doesn't thank others for doing something good.
   a bored　b ungrateful　c useless　d comfortable

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة

My name's Nadia. I have two brothers and a sister. When we were children, we could do many things. My brothers Adel and Walid could play football. I could play the piano.

My sister, Soha could run. Walid couldn't do his homework. I helped him. My mother could cook delicious food, but we couldn't cook any food. Now we grow up and we can cook all kinds of food and help our mother.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Nadia has ....
   a no sisters　b a sister　c three sisters　d two sisters

Help your child deal with such questions.　ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

2. .... couldn't do homework.

a Nadia b Walid c Adel d Soha

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence. ....

4. Could Nadia play the piano? ....

5. What could Nadia's brothers do? ....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. couldn't - speak - **We** - German. ....
2. rested - under - **They** - tree - the. ....
3. ungrateful - be - **How** - so - can - you? ....
4. trees - for - **Why** - humans - are - important? .... الجيزة - إدارة أوسيم (2023)

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Nabil couldn't .... (**speaks**) Italian.
2. Last year, I .... (**can**) play tennis. القاهرة - إدارة الزاوية (2024)
3. Now, Hoda .... (**could**) run very quickly.
4. .... (**Can**) you speak when you were ten months?
5. Hisham couldn't .... (**played**) a guitar at seven. الإسكندرية - إدارة برج العرب (2023)
6. We .... (**could to**) help our mother last week. الإسماعيلية - إدارة الإسماعيلية (2023)

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

i couldn't take the bus ....

7 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Things you could do when you were little

Guiding phrases

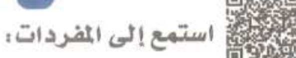
talk with my parents - run very fast

....

....

Lesson 3 This is so interesting

Key vocabulary





Arsenal	ارسنال (نادى انجليزى)	famous	مشهور
relax	يسترخى	excellent	ممتاز
ring	يرن	professional	محترف
		clear	واضح

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

1 Suffix (-er) اللاحقة

نضيف (-er) إلى نهاية الكلمة أو الفعل لتكوين الاسم:

Noun الاسم		Word الكلمة	
teacher	مدرس	teach	يدرس
reader	قارئ	read	يقرأ
farmer	فلاح	farm	مزرعة
footballer	لاعب كرة قدم	football	كرة القدم
traveler	مسافر	travel	يسافر
climber	متسلق	climb	يتسلق

2 Adjectives end with (ing) - (ed) صفات تنتهي بـ (ed) أو بـ (ing)

- نضيف (ing) أو (ed) إلى نهاية الفعل لتكوين الصفة.
- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) يحذف ونضيف (ing) أو (ed).
- لاحظ الصفات التي تنتهي بـ (ed) توصف الشئ أو الشخص الذى يتأثر أو يشعر بالصفة أما الصفات التي تنتهي بـ (ing) تصف الشيء أو الشخص الذى يسبب الصفة.

Adjectives with (ing) صفات تنتهي بـ (ing)		Adjectives with (ed) صفات تنتهي بـ (ed)		Verbs أفعال	
annoying	مزعج	annoyed	منزعج	annoy	يزعج
amazing	مدهش	amazed	مندهش	amaze	يندهش
interesting	شيق	interested	مهتم	interest	يهتم
tiring	مُتعب	tired	مُتعَب	tire	يتُعب
surprising	مفاجئ	surprised	مندهش	surprise	يندهش

1 Listen and repeat the words:

استمع وردد الكلمات:

2 Listen again and write the (er) words:

استمع مرة أخرى واكتب الكلمات بـ (er):



1. 

t _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ .

2. 

r _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ .

3. 

c _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ .

4. f _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ .

5. 

f _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ .

6. 

t _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ .

3 Complete the sentences with words from Exercise 2:

أكمل الجمل بكلمات من التمرين رقم ٢ :

1. My grandfather was a great .... He traveled to many great places around the world.
2. A famous Egyptian .... in England is Mohamed Elneny - he plays for Arsenal.
3. My favorite .... is Miss Salwa. She's very friendly and kind in the classroom.
4. My cousin is a very good .... He reads about 20 books a year.

4 Add (-ed) and (-ing) to the verbs to make adjectives:

أضف (ing) أو (ed) للأفعال لتكوين الصفات:

1. annoy → annoyed, annoying
2. amaze → .... , ...
3. interest → .... , ...
4. tire → .... , ...
5. surprise → .... , ...

5 Complete the crossword with words from Exercises 1 - 4

أكمل الكلمات المتقاطعة بالكلمات من التمارين ١ - ٤:

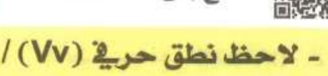
Across:

1. Mr Mahmoud is an excellent .... He plants the best tomatoes in town!
3. That long walk was very .... I can't wait to get home and relax!
5. My uncle's a professional .... He goes up some very high mountains.

Down:

2. I find my phone really .... when it rings while I'm sleeping.
4. Mr Eissa is a great................................ . He makes everything clear in our lessons.

Pronunciation



استمع إلى الكلمات:

V v **W w**

- لاحظ نطق حرفي (Vv) / (Ww) من الأصوات التي تهتز فيها الأحبال الصوتية (voiced sound) حيث تضع يديك علي الحنجرة وتشعر باهتزاز عند نطقهم.

/Vv/

- لاحظ عند نطق حرف (Vv) نضغط بالأسنان العليا علي الجزء السفلي للشفاة.


vet
طبيب بيطري


violin
آلـة الكمان


volcano
بـركان


vase
زهـــرية

vest
سترة (صديري)


village قرية

/Ww/

- لاحظ عند نطق حرف /Ww/ نعمل دائرة ضيقة بالشفتين.


winter
الشـــتاء



wheel
عجلة (إطار سيارة)



wet
مـبلل


whale
حـــوت



watermelon
بطيخة



west
الغـــرب


water
ماء




Wednesday
الأربعاء

1 Listen and circle the word you hear. Then listen again and check:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة التي تسمعها. ثم استمع مرة أخرى وتأكد:

استمع إلى الكلمات أخر الكتاب :

1.	west	vest	2.	wheel	whale	3.	vase	vest
4.	vet	wet	5.	violin	volcano	6.	water	winter

2 Listen and write the words:

استمع واكتب الكلمات:



1. .... 2. .... 3. ....

4. .... 5. .... 6. ....

7. .... 8. .... 9. ....

3 Listen and write. Then listen again and check:

استمع واكتب. ثم استمع مرة آخرى وتأكد:



Last ❶...................... I decided(1) to travel ❷...................... in my boat wearing my ❸...................... . I was looking for a ❹...................... but I had some problems(2). I met some ❺...................... and they turned over(3) my boat. I had to sit on my ❻...................... to stay afloat(4)! I ate ❼...................... to stay healthy and I came to shore(5). I didn't find the ❽...................... , but I met some vets and they took me home to my ❾......................!

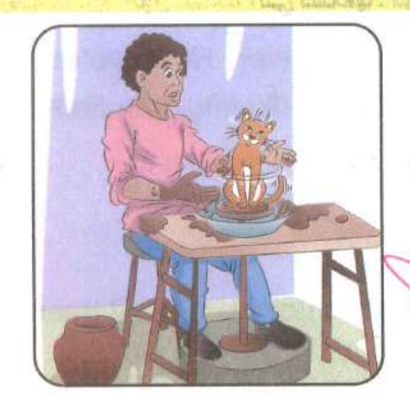
Arabic Meaning

١- قرر
٢- مشكلات
٣- قلبوا
٤- يبقى عائماً
٥- الشاطئ

4 Listen and repeat the tongue twister. Can you say it quickly:

استمع وردد الكلمات أو الجمل التى تسبب تنافر أو تلعثم اللسان. هل تستطيع أن تقولها بسرعة؟

- يقصد بـ (tongue twister) تنافر أو تلعثم اللسان من أجل توضيح مدى السرعة التي يمكنك بها التحدث بمجموعة من الكلمات لها نفس الحروف والتي يصعب نطقها معًا في جملة واحدة.



Waleed made vases on very wet wheels for vets.

صنع وليد زهريات علي عجلات مبللة للأطباء البيطريين.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. My brother is wearing a blue ....

a vest b west c wheel d vase

2. My favorite season is the .... المنيا - إدارة ملوى (2024)

a water b winter c volcano d watermelon

3. My uncle is a professional .... He goes up some very high mountains.

a climbing b climber c climbed d climbs

4. The history of Egypt is so ....

a interested b interesting c interest d interests

5. My father travels around the world. He's a great .... القليوبية - إدارة شرق شبرا الخيمة (2024)

a traveler b traveling c travel d traveled

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

wore - van - vet - wet

My uncle is a vet. He lives in a village. Yesterday, he woke up early and ❶ .... his vest. He saw a ❷ .... cat in the street. He took it and put it in his ❸ .... He gave it water and food. The cat was very happy.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة

My grandfather could do many things when he was young. He went to the library once a week. He was a good reader. He read about 30 books every year. He could also climb very high mountains. He was a great traveler. He traveled to many places around the world. When I grow up, I want to be like my grandfather.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My grandfather could climb high ....

a places b walls c mountains d trees

2. My grandfather read about .... books every year.

a thirteen   b thirty   c sixty   d three

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why did the grandfather go to the library?

....

4. Where did the grandfather travel?

....

5. Summarize the paragraph in one sentence.

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. interested - I'm - history - very - in. البحيرة - إدارة أبو حمص (2023)

....

2. got - home - relax - I - to.

....

3. four - The - has - wheels - car.

....

4. kind - your - friendly - teacher - Is - and? أسيوط - أدارة الفتح (2023)

....

5. professional - My - climber - is - uncle - a. سوهاج - إدارة سوهاج (2023)

....

6. makes - clear - Who - everything - lessons - in?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. My favorite .... (teaching) is Miss Mona. She is kind and helpful. المنيا - العدوة (2023)
2. My uncle Youssef is very .... (interesting) in the rocks. أسيوط - إدارة الفتح (2023)
3. The movie I saw yesterday was .... (amaze).
4. This school trip was very .... (tired).
5. The story I read was very .... (bored). أسيوط - إدارة البدارى (2024)

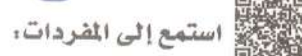
6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

- do you like eating watermelons ....

Lessons 4&5 Writing & project

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:

nickname	اسم الشهرة / لقب / كناية	unusual animal	حيوان غير مألوف (غريب)
sea cow	بقرة البحر	dugong	الأطوم (بقر البحر) (حيوان بحري كبير الحجم من فصيلة الثدييات)
sea bed	قاع البحر		
infographic	مخطط معلومات بيانى		



Other words كلمات أخرى

bison	ثور امريكى	email	بريد إلكترونى
warm	دافىء	cute	جميل
cool	بارد	basketball	كرة السلة
percent	نسبة مئوية	note	ملاحظة
surface	سطح	habitat	بيئة الحيوان أو النبات
eagle	طائر العقاب	polar	قطبى
wolf	ذئب	grassland	أرض عشبية

Writing an email كتابة الإيميل

تذكر أن:

١. عند كتابة الإيميل نبدأ بـ: From + اسم المرسل
ثم تكتب: To + اسم المرسل إليه

٢. نبدأ الإيميل بكلمات (عزيزي Dear) أو (أهلا Hi) ثم اسم المرسل إليه.

٣. ثم نقول لماذا تكتب الإيميل باستخدام عبارات مثل:
- Just a quick note مجرد ملحوظة سريعة
- Thanks for writing to me. شكرًا للكتابة لى.

٤. أعطي فكرة عن الموضوع ثم توسع في شرحه.

٥. عندما تكتب لصديقك استخدم لغة غير رسمية مثل:
- اختصارات مثل: I'm - / كلمات مثل: awesome / cool.
- عبارات مثل: How's life? / How are things?

٦. اختم الإيميل بعبارات مثل:
- Write soon. أكتب لى فى أقرب وقت.
- Hope to hear from you soon. أتمنى أن اعرف أخبارك قريباً.
- See you soon. اراك قريباً.
- All the best. كل الأمنيات الطيبة.
- Bye for now. إلى اللقاء.

٧. ثم تكتب إسمك.

Study the following

1. I play on a team once a week.
- ألعب في الفريق مرة في الأسبوع.

2. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the dugong.
- الأطوم حيواني المفضل وغير المألوف في مصر.

3. It's got a lovely friendly face and it's very cute.
- لديه وجه أليف و محبوب وهو حيوان رائع جدًا.

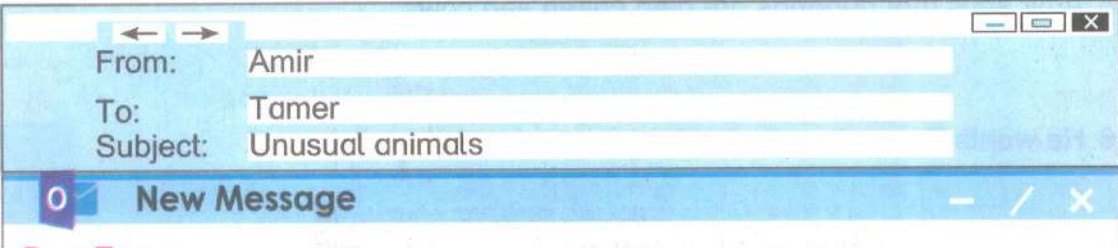
4. Its nickname is the sea cow.
- اسم الشهرة هو بقرة البحر.

5. It spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day.
- يقضي ساعات طويلة يأكل العشب من قاع البحر كل يوم.

1 Read Amir's email. What's his favorite unusual animal?

اقرأ إيميل أمير. ما الحيوان غير المألوف لديه؟


استمع إلى النص :



New Message

Dear Tamer,

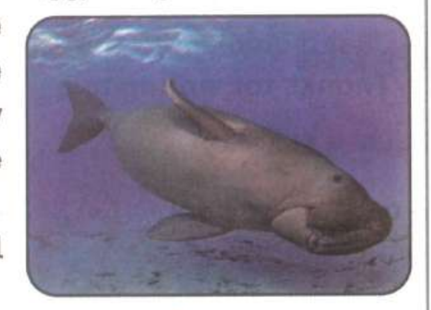
Thanks for your email. How are things? It was really interesting to hear about the sports you like. I love basketball, and I play on a team once a week.

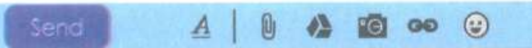
This week we're talking a lot about unusual animals at school. We looked at animals from around the world and some from Egypt. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the dugong - can you see the photo? I think it's got a lovely friendly face and it's very cute! Its nickname is the sea cow and it spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day.

What about you? What's your favorite unusual animal? Write back and let me know.

Hope to hear from you soon!

Amir


dugong



2 Read again and answer True (T) or False (F):

اقرأ النص السابق مرة أخرى وأجب بـ (False) أو (True):

1. Tamer called Amir and they talked about sports. [ ]
2. Amir doesn't like sports. [ ]
3. Amir wants to talk about wildlife. [ ]
4. He sends a photo to Tamer. [ ]
5. Amir says that dugongs are also called sea cows. [ ]
6. He wants Tamer to write back. [ ]

3 Complete the email phrases:

أكمل عبارات الإيميل:

things - note - best - soon

1. See you .... !
2. How are .... ?
3. Just a quick ....
4. All the ....

4 Work in pairs. Discuss and decide:

اعملوا فى ثنائيات. تناقشوا وقرروا:

You are going to make an infographic about an animal habitat. First, look at the example of an infographic. Then choose a habitat for your infographic. Here are some ideas:

- ستقوم بعمل مخطط معلومات بيانى. انظر للمثال القادم اولاً لمخطط المعلومات. ثم اختر بيئة لمخططك اليك بعض الافكار.

• desert • forest • polar • ocean





1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

horse - face - cute - cow

Yesterday, I watched a programme about strange animals. It was about the dugong. The dugong is very ❶ .... It has lovely and friendly ❷ .... Its nickname is the sea ❸ .... I loved this animal. (المنوفية - إدارة قويسنا (2024))

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. nickname - the sea - **Its** - cow - is.

....

2. you - photo - **Can** - the - see?

....

3. email - your - **Thanks** - for. (الدقهلية - إدارة ميت غمر (2024))

....

4. eats - the sea - **The dugong** - bed - grass - from.

....

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I .... (playing) on a team once a week.
2. The dugong has got a lovely .... (friend) face. (الشرقية - إدارة فاقوس (2024))
3. This week, we're .... (talk) about unusual animals.
4. .... (Writing) back and let me know.

4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. does Amir like sports

....

2. what s your favorite unusual animal?

....

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

Review

Animals الحيوانات


kangaroo
حيوان الكونغر


panda
الباندا


bat
خفاش


lion
أسد


penguin
بطريق


dolphin
دولفين


snail حلزون



parrot ببغاء

Other words كلمات أخرى



busy	مشغول	relax	يسترخي
German	اللغة الألمانية	save	ينقذ
use a computer	يستخدم كمبيوتر	shade	ظل
play chess	يلعب الشطرنج	traders	تجار
nuts	مكسرات	meeting point	مكان للتجمع
exhausted	منهك (متعب جدًا)	breeze	نسيم (رياح خفيف)
branch of a tree	فرع شجرة	useless	بلا فائدة
trunk of a tree	جذع الشجرة	ungrateful	ناكر الجميل
wide	واسع - عريض	dugong	الأطوم
famous	مشهور	sea cow	بقرة البحر
shelter	مأوى	nickname	اسم الشهرة / لقب / كناية
rest	يستريح	sea bed	قاع البحر
comfortable	مريح	unusual animal	حيوان غير مألوف (غريب)

Pronunciation

Ww **Vv**

- لاحظ نطق حرفي (Vv) / (Ww) من الأصوات التي تهتز فيها الأحبال الصوتية (voiced sound) حيث تضع يديك علي الحنجرة وتشعر باهتزاز عند نطقهم.

/Vv/



vase	volcano	violin	vet
زهـــرية	بـركان	آلـة الكمان	طبيب بيطري

/Ww/



watermelon	whale	wheel عجلة	winter
بطيخة	حـــوت	(اطار سيارة)	الشـــتاء



ملاحظات لغوية

1 للتعبير عن: استطاعة فعل شيء في الحاضر نستخدم:

فعل فى المصدر + inf + يستطيع أن can + فاعل

- Birds **can** fly.

◉ فى النفي نستخدم:

فعل فى المصدر + لا يستطيع أن can't + فاعل

- Pandas **can't** drive a car.

◉ فى السؤال نستخدم: Can + فاعل + inf فعل فى المصدر?

- **Can** you play tennis?

◉ لاحظ لا نضع (to) بعد can / can't

---

2 للتعبير عن: استطاعة فعل شيء في الماضي نستخدم:

◉ فى الاثبات: فاعل + could + inf فعل فى المصدر.

- I **could** run fast last year.

◉ فى النفى: فاعل + couldn't + inf فعل فى المصدر.

- I **couldn't** take the bus so I had to walk.

◉ فى السؤال: Could + فاعل + inf فعل فى المصدر?

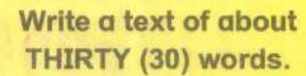
- **Could** you play the piano last year?

◉ لاحظ لا نضع (to) بعد could / couldn't

When عندما + فاعل + ماضى بسيط, + فاعل + {could / couldn't} + inf فعل في المصدر.

- When I **was** five, I **could** speak English.
- When she **was** a baby, she **couldn't** walk.





Lesson 1

My trip to a wildlife park

1. Yesterday, I went to the wildlife park. I went with my family in my father's car. The animals were amazing. I saw the little kangaroos could sit inside their mom's pouch. There were beautiful parrots. They could talk and say some words.

Lesson 2

Things you could do when you were little

2. When I was little, I could talk with my parents. I could play with my toys. I couldn't walk. When I was six, I could run very fast. My mother helped me to do a lot of things.

Test - Unit 9

The bats

3. Bats fly at night. They are all hiding. We can't see them in the dark. They sleep upside down on trees. They are black. I don't like them. But my teacher wants me to do a project about them.

Al-Azhar Test

اختبار خاص بالأزهر الشريف



A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I like -------------. (animals - birds - insects)
2. The parrot can -------------. (swim - talk - read)
3. I say some words for it to -------------. (sing - think - repeat)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ و أكمل المحادثة:

see - unusual - go - park

A : Where did you ❶ ------------------------- last weekend?

B : I went to the new wildlife ❷ ------------------------- .

A : What did you ❸ -------------------------?

B : I saw some ❹ ------------------------- animals.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the questions: أقرا و اجب عن الأسئلة:

This week we're talking about unusual animals at school. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the dugong. It's got lovely friendly face and it's very cute. Its nickname is the sea cow and it spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. What are we talking about this week?

----

2. Where's the unusual animal from?

B - Choose the correct answer:

3. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the ....
(elephant - dugong - lion)

4. Its nickname is the sea .... (fish - whale - cow)

5. It spends many hours eating .... from the sea bed every day.
(meat - rice - grass)

D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A .... can jump on two legs.

a snake b snail c kangaroo

2. It's important to .... lots of trees.

a sleep b meet c plant

3. My favorite .... is Miss Fatma. She is kind in the classroom.

a vet b doctor c teacher

4. Sorry, I .... help you with your homework. I'm busy.

a can b can't c could

5. I .... speak French when I lived in France.

a can b can't c could

5 Read and reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اقرأ و اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملا صحيحة:

1. is - a little - A breeze - wind.

....

2. live - Snails - shells - can - in.

....

3. you - Could - use - computer - a?

....

4. plant - Is - trees - it - important - to?

....

5. see - in - I - bats - the dark - couldn't.

....



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. The penguin lives in the ____________ .
   a park b ocean c forest d wildlife
2. The penguin is a ____________ animal.
   a lazy b slow c friendly d useless
3. The penguin swims in a ____________ with his family.
   a school b group c team d class
4. The ____________ teacher was very happy about the project.
   a math b Arabic c English d science

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A ____________ lives in China and eats bamboo. أسيوط - إدارة الفتح (2023)
   a parrot b panda c penguin d bat
2. ____________ are funny and friendly sea animals. المنيا - إدارة العدوة (2023)
   a Bats b Lions c Parrots d Dolphins
3. Baby kangaroos can sit in their mom's ____________ . الجيزة - إدارة أوسيم (2023)
   a pouch b arm c shell d hand

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار: أسيوط - إدارة الفتح (2023)

nickname - talks - spends - cute

I'm doing research about the dugong. It's an unusual sea animal. It's very 1 __________ . Its 2 __________ is the sea cow. It 3 __________ many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة

Yesterday, we had a science lesson about the wildlife. It was an awesome lesson. Then, my teacher Miss Rasha asked us to make an infographic about the forest habitat. All the class collected some ideas about the life and animals in the forest. We drew some pictures of interesting animals like kangaroos, parrots and bats. My favorites were the parrots. They are so wonderful. They can talk and repeat words. I want to keep a parrot at home. That sounds amazing.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the text is about the .... habitat.

a desert   b forest   c grassland   d ocean

2. Miss Rasha asked us to make a/an .... about the forest.

a lesson   b project   c infographic   d email

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What can parrots do? ....

4. How was the science lesson? ....

5. What did the class collect? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. feed - my - I've - rabbit - got - to. ....
2. swim - Could - year - Hany - last? ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. We .... (Can) use a computer last year.
2. The trip I went yesterday was very .... (bored) . الشرقية - إدارة ههيا (2023)

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. the dolphin swims in the ocean ....
2. I couldn t speak German last year ....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

The bats

Guiding questions

1- When do bats fly?

2- How do bats sleep?

....

....

....

....

Review 3



Objectives of Review 3

أهداف المراجعة

Lesson 1: Listening and speaking

- To revise the vocabulary and language from Units 7 - 9.

- يراجع الطالب المفردات والقواعد اللغوية الموجودة بالوحدات من ٧ إلى ٩.

Lesson 2: Phonics and Assessment

- To revise the key letter sounds from Units 7 - 9.

- يراجع الطالب الصوتيات من الوحدات ٧ إلى ٩.

- To evaluate progress in Units 7 - 9.

- يتم تقييم مدى نجاح الطالب فى استيعاب الوحدات من ٧ الى ٩.

Lesson 1 Units 7, 8 & 9

1 Listen and point:
استمع وأشر:


Tapescript نص الاستماع


استمع إلى المفردات

1- clock	6- kangaroo	11- dugong
2- cough	7- headache	12- panda
3- bat	8- balcony	13- oven
4- closet	9- lion	14- toothache
5- dolphin	10- shoulder	15- parrot

Start

1- clock	2- ______	3- ______	4- ______	5- ______
10- ______	9- ______	8- ______	7- ______	6- ______
11- ______	12- ______	13- ______	14- ______	15- ______

Finish

2 Complete the sentences using the words in the box:

أكمل الجمل مستخدما الكلمات فى القائمة :

unhappy - unsafe - uncomfortable - unfriendly

1. I'm glad Mom and Dad didn't buy that couch it was really uncomfortable.
2. She's very .... because she lost her homework.
3. We all thought the new girl was ...., but actually she just didn't talk much.
4. That electrical wire looks very .... - don't touch it!

3 Complete the text about Injy's day in Alexandria with the verbs in the regular and irregular past simple form:

أكمل النص عن يوم إنجى فى الأسكندرية باستخدام الأفعال المنتظمة وغير المنتظمة فى زمن الماضى البسيط :

I ...had... **(have)** a lovely day yesterday.
I ❷ .... **(travel)** to Alexandria with my mom to see my aunt. We ❸ .... **(go)** by train. I love trains!

When we ❹ .... **(arrive)**, we ❺ .... **(rush)** straight to my aunt's house. She ❻ .... **(give)** us a delicious lunch. After lunch, my aunt ❼ .... **(take)** us to the Corniche. The sea ❽ .... **(be)** really beautiful.

4 Complete the sentences about the rest of Injy's day in Exercise 3. Check (√) the sentences with irregular verbs:

أكمل النص عن باقى يوم إنجى فى التمرين ٣. ضع علامة صح أمام الجمل التى تحتوى على أفعال غير منتظمة :

1- We ...drank... **(drink)** juice at a café in the square. (√)
2- Then we .... **(drive)** to the market and .... **(buy)** a present for a friend. ( )
3- We .... **(have)** a great time. ( )
4- I nearly .... **(miss)** the train home! ( )
5- I .... **(sleep)** all the way back home. ( )

Lesson 2 Units 7, 8 & 9

1 Label the photos with the words in the box:

ضع الكلمة المناسبة من القائمة تحت الصورة الخاصة بها:

backache - cough - earache - headache - sore throat - toothache

1 

headache

2 

----

3 

----

4 

----

5 

----

6 

----

2 Put the dialog in the correct order. Listen, check, and repeat. Then act it out in pairs:

رتب المحادثة. استمع وتأكد وكرر ثم قم بالادوار فى ثنائيات:



Nurse : Come in, Kareem. What's the matter? (1)

Kareem: Thank you, nurse. ( )

Nurse : Oh dear. Did you hit your ear with a ball? ( )

Kareem: I have an earache. ( )

Nurse : Let me see. Yes, it is red inside. I think you should go home. I'll telephone your mom. ( )

Kareem: No, I had an earache when I woke up this morning. ( )

3 Listen then write the words you hear. Then match the words and pictures:

استمع ثم اكتب الكلمات التى تسمعها. ثم صل الكلمات بالصور:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



4 Complete the sentences with could or couldn't:

أكمل النص باستخدام could أو couldn't:

1. I couldn't speak when I was one month old.
2. I .... ride a bike when I was a baby.
3. Waleed .... read when he was 6. He loves reading!
4. Amira .... write until she went to school.
5. Tamer's brother .... drive at 20 - he passed his driving test at 18.
6. I .... play a guitar at seven. My dad taught me.

5 Complete the crossword with the -er words:

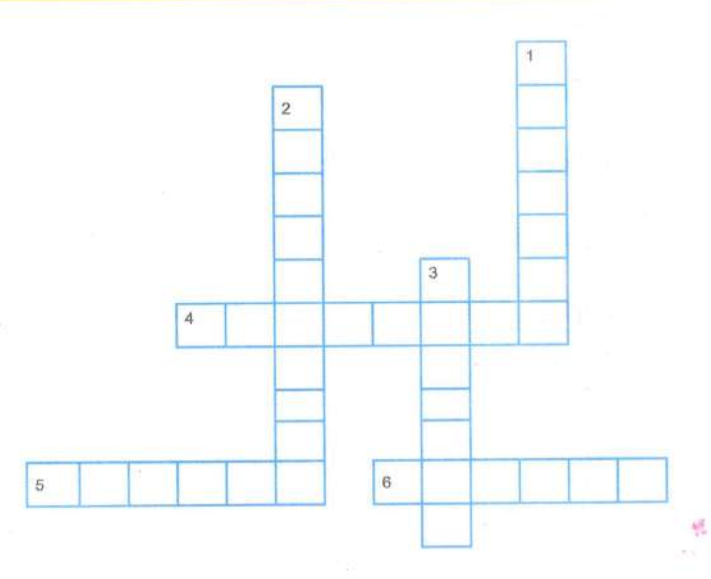
أكمل الكلمات المتقاطعة باستخدام كلمات تنتهي بـ er:

Down

1. Someone who helps you in the classroom.
2. Someone who plays a famous sport with a ball.
3. Someone who goes up mountains using a rope.

Across

4. Someone who travels to a lot of places.
5. Someone who grows food for us.
6. Someone who reads a lot.



Test on Units 7, 8 & 9



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Laila lives in ....
   a Aswan b Cairo c Luxor d Giza
2. Laila's parents moved to a .... apartment.
   a smaller b closer c longer d wider
3. There are four .... in the new apartment.
   a rooms b beds c cushions d armchairs
4. They have .... in the living room.
   a closet b television c balcony d gift

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. That long road is very .... , I can't walk.
   a tiring b comfortable c interesting d amazing
2. Ancient Egyptians used .... to make bricks. المنوفية - إدارة أشمون (2024)
   a papyrus b mats c mud d wood
3. When we have a headache, we take ....
   a sunscreen b pills c bandages d bacteria

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

fields - cool - sell - unfair

Trees are important in our life. They give us food and shade. When we sit under the tree on hot days, we feel ❶ .... Farmers plant more trees in their ❷ .... They get a lot of fruit from these trees and ❸ .... them at the market.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة

My sister Hoda is a pupil in primary five. She likes helping **patients**. She wants to be a nurse when she grows up. On the summer holiday, she goes to the hospital near her house. The doctors and nurses like her. They teach her how to change bandages and give injections. She helps them at the hospital. She buys books about medicine, too. She helps her family when they are sick.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Hoda wants to be a .... when she grows up.

   a vet b doctor c nurse d patient

2. The underlined word "**patients**" means .... people.

   a sick b healthy c helpful d useful

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where does Hoda go on the summer holiday? ....
4. What does Hoda learn from doctors and nurses? ....
5. When does Hoda help her family? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. tortoise - very - Can - fast - run? ....
2. important - food - eat - to - healthy - It's. .... بني سويف - إدارة بني سويف (2023)

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Don't touch this electric wire. It's .... (safe). البحيرة - إدارة أبو حمص (2023)
2. We drove to the shop and .... (buy) a gift for my mother.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. could you play the guitar ....
2. i had a lovely day yesterday ....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

"Your favorite animal"

Fact file

Food	Bamboo
Color	Black and white

....

....



Being responsible

Let's visit Egypt

هيا نزور مصر



Objectives of the Unit

أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about places in a town.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن الأماكن الموجودة بالمدينة.

2. Practice using the imperative to tell someone to do or not to do something and to give directions.

- يتدرب الطالب على استخدام صيغة الأمر لإخبار شخص ما بفعل شيء ما أو عدم فعله وإعطاء الإتجاهات.

3. Practice using questions and short answers.

- يتدرب الطالب على استخدام صيغة الأسئلة والإجابات القصيرة.

4. Read and say words with diphthongs.

- يقرأ الطالب ويقول الكلمات التي تحتوي على ادغام.

5. Estimate with mental math.

- يقوم الطالب بالتقدير باستخدام الرياضيات الذهنية.

6. Write a paragraph about my town.

- يكتب الطالب فقرة إنشائية عن مدينته.

7. Make a poster about my perfect town.

- يصنع الطالب ملصقًا عن مدينته المثالية.

Lesson 1 ★ We Love Alexandria!

Key vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات:



bank بنك


factory مصنع


monument نُصب تذكاري / أثر


library مكتبة


shopping mall مول تجاري

Places
الأماكن


square ميدان


station محطة




museum متحف


market سوق


beach شاطئ


supermarket سوبر ماركت



hotel فندق



restaurant مطعم

mint tea	شاي بالنعناع
local cuisine	مأكولات / أطباق محلية
spend ages	يقضي الكثير من الوقت
originally	في الأصل
on vacation	في إجازة



Countries, Cities and towns

Countries	دول
Egypt	مصر
England	إنجلترا
Germany	ألمانيا

Cities & towns	مدن كبيرة وصغيرة
Alexandria	الإسكندرية
Fayoum	الفيوم
Cairo	القاهرة
Barcelona	برشلونة

جميع أسماء الدول والمدن تبدأ بحرف **capital**.

Other words كلمات أخرى



stores	متاجر / محلات
tourist	سائح
roof garden	حديقة فوق السطح
chatting	دردشة
relaxing	مريح
excellent	ممتاز
culture	حضارة / ثقافة
yet	حتى الآن
exciting	مثير / رائع
ingredients	مكونات الطعام

friendly	ودود
the Pyramids	الأهرامات
school trip	رحلة مدرسية
traditional food	طعام تقليدي
fresh	طازج
modern buildings	مباني حديثة
traditions	تقاليد
shopping	التسوق
swimming	السباحة
mix of	مزيج / خليط من

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
serve	يقدم طعام	served
remind	يُذكِّر	reminded
own	يملك	owned

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
think	يعتقد	thought
go	يذهب	went
find out	يكتشف	found out
see	يرى	saw



Study the following

1 Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. الإسكندرية مكان مثير حقًا للزيارة.

2 There's a lot to see and do here! هناك الكثير لرؤيته والقيام به هنا!

3 I love just sitting in the roof garden of my hotel.

أحب الجلوس في الحديقة التى على سطح الفندق.

4 I love drinking sweet Egyptian mint tea and chatting to other people.

أحب شُرب الشاي المصري بالنعناع الحلو المذاق والدردشة مع الآخرين.

5 I've lived in Alexandria all my life. لقد عشت في الإسكندرية طوال حياتي.

6 You must visit my restaurant to try some of the local cuisine.

يجب أن تزور مطعمي لتتذوّق بعض الطعام المحلي.

7 We serve traditional Egyptian food using lovely fresh local ingredients.

نقدم الطعام المصري التقليدي باستخدام مكوِّنات محلية طازجة لذيذة.

8 I prefer to buy my ingredients at the market. أفضل شراء مكونات طعامى من السوق.

9 We spend ages walking around them. نقضي الكثير من الوقت في التجول حولهم.

10 I'm Egyptian, originally from Cairo. أنا مصري، في الأصل من القاهرة.

11 My favorite place is the beach. المكان المفضل لدي هو الشاطئ.

12 I'm on vacation here from Barcelona. أنا في إجازة هنا قادماً من برشلونة.

13 I love the mix of modern and old buildings. أحب المزيج بين المباني الحديثة والقديمة.

14 I like to find out about the culture and traditions. أحب التعرف على الثقافة والتقاليد.

15 There's a really big station in my town. هناك بالفعل محطة كبيرة في بلدتي.



1 Listen and read: Who is from Alexandria? استمع واقرأ. من مدينته الإسكندرية؟



Tapescript نص الاستماع



استمع إلى النص:

Why we love Alexandria!



Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. There's a lot to see and do here! It's a big city with lots of amazing restaurants, stores, markets, and museums. There's even a beach! We asked some people who live there and tourists what they think ...

Jens: I'm visiting Alexandria from Germany. I think it's really cool here. I think there are some good museums, but I haven't been to any **yet** (1). I love just sitting in the **roof garden** (2) of my hotel, drinking sweet Egyptian **mint tea** (3) and chatting to other people. It's very **relaxing** (4).

Hanan: I've lived in Alexandria all my life. I own a restaurant here so I have to say that you must visit my restaurant to try some of the **local cuisine** (5). We serve traditional Egyptian food using lovely fresh local ingredients. We have **excellent** (6) supermarkets, but I prefer to buy my **ingredients** (7) at the market in the old town.

Kira and Lena: We're from a small town in England. The **stores** (8) aren't very good there. That's what we love most about Alexandria — the shopping malls! We **spend ages** (9) walking around them. We like the people. They are so **friendly** (10)!

Karim: I'm Egyptian, **originally** (11) from Cairo. I moved to Alexandria last year and I love it here. I work in a bank. My favorite place is the beach—there isn't one in Cairo! It can get very hot here in **summer** (12), so it's great to go there and swim.

Paulo: I'm on **vacation** (13) here from **Barcelona** (14). I like Alexandria because it reminds me of home — a big, modern city near the sea. I love the mix of modern and old **buildings** (15). Also, I like to find out about the **culture** (16) and **traditions** (17). The library is amazing!

Arabic Meaning

١- حتي الآن
٢- الحديقة فوق السطح
٣- شاي بالنعناع
٤- مريح
٥- أكلات محلية
٦- ممتاز
٧- مكونات الطعام
٨- متاجر
٩- يقضي وقت كثير
١٠- ودود
١١- أصلاً / في الاصل
١٢- الصيف
١٣- عطلة
١٤- برشلونة
١٥- مباني
١٦- ثقافة / حضارة
١٧- تقاليد

2 Listen again. Circle the correct word:

استمع مرة أخرى وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Jens likes drinking tea in the **museum** / **hotel**.
2. Hanan buys her ingredients from the **supermarket** / **market**.
3. Kira and Lena like **shopping** / **swimming** in Alexandria.
4. Karim lives in **Cairo** / **Alexandria**.
5. Paulo likes Alexandria because it is like **Cairo** / **Barcelona**.

3 Listen and repeat. Then look and write:

استمع و ردد. ثم انظر واكتب:

station - factory - library - monument - bank - square - shopping mall

1 

....

2 
....

3 
....

4 
....

5 
....

6 
....

7 
....

4 Listen and match the places and people:

استمع وصل الأماكن بالأشخاص:



library - monument - factory - station

Sara	Ahmed	Dina	Youssef
1 	2 	3 	4 
....	....	....	....

5 Look at the places in Exercise 3. Which of the places are in your town? Talk to a partner:

انظر إلى الصور فى تمرين ٣ أى من الاماكن موجودة فى مدينتك؟ تكلم مع زميلك:



There's a really big station on my town.

That's right. There's also a library.





1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Gamal goes to Alexandria every ....

a year b month c day d week

2. Gamal goes to Alexandria with his ....

a friends b family c neighbors d cousins

3. Gamal stays in a comfortable ....

a bank b hotel c museum d park

4. Gamal has lunch in a big ....

a hotel b restaurant c museum d beach

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We catch the train at the .... القاهرة - إدارة السلام (2023)

a station b factory c library d post office

2. I go to Alexandria and play on the ....

a beach b factory c umbrellas d shopping mall

3. My uncle works in a big food .... in Helwan. القليوبية - إدارة غرب شبرا (2023)

a bank b library c factory d museum

4. We can keep your money safely in the .... الإسماعيلية - إدارة الإسماعيلية (2023)

a museum b restaurant c bank d shopping mall

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

library - relaxing - hotel - culture

My name's Tom. I'm on vacation in Alexandria. Every year I like visiting Alexandria. I stay in a ❶ .... near the sea. In the morning I swim on the beach. Then, I visit the Alexandria ❷ .... to read books about the ❸ .... and traditions. I also eat the traditional Egyptian food. الغربية - إدارة زفتى (2024)

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة الجيزة - إدارة أبو النمرس (2023)

Last summer, I went with my family to Alexandria. We went there by train. We stayed at a big hotel. In the morning, we went to the beach where I swam and played with the sand. In the afternoon, we had lunch at a nice restaurant. We visited Alexandria Library. We also went to the cinema and watched an adventure film. We had a good time in Alexandria.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They went to Alexandria by ....
   a bus   b car   c foot   d train
2. They went to the .... in the morning.
   a beach   b cinema   c library   d restaurant

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Where did they stay? ....
4. What did they watch in the cinema? ....
5. Summarize the text in one sentence. ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. mint - I - tea - drank - with. ....
2. to - Ramy - wants - books - some - borrow. ....
3. works - food - in - My uncle - a big - factory. .... الإسماعيلية - إدارة الإسماعيلية (2023)
4. a really - place - exciting - Alexandria - to visit - is. ....

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. we love Alexandria in the summer ....
2. i have lived in alexandria all my life. ....

7 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

A visit to Alexandria

Guiding phrases
- exciting place to visit
- favorite place is the beach

....

....

Lesson 2 ★ Don't Run In The Library!

Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات:

environment	البيئة	flower	زهرة
trash	قمامة	trash can	صندوق قمامة

Other words كلمات أخرى



Alexandria Library	مكتبة الإسكندرية	Go straight	سر بشكل مباشر
moment	لحظة	Excuse me	معذرة
everybody	الجميع	at the end	في نهاية
quietly	بهدوء	on your right	علي يمينك
upstairs	الطابق العلوي	on the left	على يسارك
elevator	مصعد	on the right	على اليمين
button	زر	librarian	أمين المكتبة
loudly	بصوت عالي	tomorrow	غداً
Main Street	الشارع الرئيسى	Park Avenue	شارع الحديقة
High Street	الشارع الرئيسى	outside	بالخارج

Instructions: تعليمات

Wait a moment.	انتظر لحظة.
Don't run.	لا تجري.
Walk quietly.	امشي بهدوء.
Go into the elevator.	اذهب إلى المصعد.
Stand back.	ارجع للخلف.
Push the number one button.	اضغط على الزر رقم واحد.
Keep the environment clean.	حافظ على نظافة البيئة.
Don't jump up and down.	لا تقفز لأعلى ولأسفل.
Turn right / left.	استدر يمينًا / يسارًا.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
wait	ينتظر	waited
close	يغلق	closed
push	يضغط / يدفع	pushed
jump	يقفز	jumped
return	يعود	returned
turn	يستدر	turned
cross	يعبر	crossed
pick	يلتقط	picked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
stand	يقف	stood
choose	يختار	chose
bring	يحضر	brought
lose	يفقد	lost



Study the following

1. This is the Alexandria Library. هذه مكتبة الإسكندرية.
2. Can we go inside? هل يمكننا الدخول؟
3. Yes, OK. Let's go in. I'm going first! نعم حسنًا. دعنا ندخل. سأدخل أولاً!
4. This is a very important place. هذا مكان هام جدًا.
5. Can we go upstairs to the Children's Library? هل يمكننا الصعود إلى مكتبة الطفل؟
6. The doors are closing. الأبواب تغلق.
7. What book are you reading? ما الكتاب الذي تقرأه؟
8. Do not eat in the library. لا تأكل فى المكتبة.
9. Bring your book back in two weeks. أعد كتابك فى خلال أسبوعين.
10. Drink your water outside. اشرب مياهك فى الخارج.
11. Don't use your cell phone here. لا تستخدم هاتفك المحمول هنا.
12. Do not lose your book. لا تضيع كتابك.
13. Just cross the road. فقط اعبر الشارع.

Grammar قواعد لغوية

1 Imperative الأمر

◉ نستخدم صيغة الأمر لإعطاء تعليمات بفعل أو عدم فعل شيء.

◉ لاحظ لا تبدأ الجملة الأمرية بفاعل subject ولكن تبدأ بالفعل فى المصدر:

◉ لا يأتى بعد فعل الامر حرف جر (to).

- اولاً الأمر المثبت:

Inf.مصدر الفعل + باقى الجملة.

- Stand up! Open the door.

◉ يمكن أن يأتى قبل الفعل كلمات تدل على الطلب المهذب أو اسم شخص:

- Please, pick up that trash.
- Ali, close the window.

- ثانيًا الأمر المنفى:

Don't / Never + infمصدر الفعل + باقى الجملة.

- Don't eat in the library, please.
- Never waste your time.

2 Giving directions إعطاء الاتجاهات

◉ للسؤال عن الاتجاهات هناك عدة طرق وهى:

1 Excuse me, how do I get to + اسم المكان?

- معذرة، كيف يمكننى أن أصل إلى........؟

2 Is there (اسم المكان) near here?

- هل يوجد (اسم المكان) بالقرب من هنا؟

3 Where is (اسم المكان), please?

- أين يوجد (اسم المكان) من فضلك؟

- Excuse me, how do I get to the park?
- Is there a park near here?
- Where is the park, please?

◉ للإجابة على هذه الأسئلة نستخدم صيغة الأمر لإعطاء التعليمات ووصف الاتجاهات:

- Turn right. استدر يمينًا.
- Cross the road. اعبر الشارع.
- Go straight. اذهب بطول.

1 Listen and read. Where are the children going?

استمع واقرأ: أين يذهبوا الأطفال؟

Tapescript نص الاستماع





استمع إلى النص:

Teacher : OK, children. We're here now. This is The Alexandria Library.

Reem : Wow! It's **amazing** (1). Can we go inside?

Teacher : Wait a **moment** (2). Is **everybody** (3) here? Yes, OK. Let's go in.

Ali : I'm going first!

Teacher : Don't run, Ali. Walk **quietly** (4). This is a very **important** (5) place.

Ali : I'm sorry.

Noha : Can we go **upstairs** (6) to the Children's Library?

Teacher : Yes. Go into the **elevator** (7). Good. Stand back. The doors are closing. Don't jump up and down, Ali! Push the number one **button** (8), Tarek. Great, thank you. We're going up!

Arabic Meaning

١- رائع / مدهش
٢- لحظة
٣- الجميع
٤- بهدوء
٥- هام
٦- الطابق العلوي
٧- مصعد
٨- زر

2 Reorder the words to make imperative sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل أمرية:

1. book - Choose - a - good - to read.

----

2. talk - loudly, - Don't - please.

----

3. write - in - Don't - the book.

----

4. the book - Return - its place - to.



3 Read the library rules. Rewrite the rules with imperatives:

اقرأ قواعد المكتبة. أعد كتابة القواعد بالأوامر:

1. You should not eat in the library.
   Don't eat in the library! ....
2. You have to bring your book back in two weeks.
   ....
3. You need to drink your water outside.
   ....
4. You cannot use your cell phone here.
   ....
5. You should not lose your book.
   ....
6. You should ask the librarian if you need help.
   ....

4 Use imperatives to show what you should or shouldn't do inside a park, using words from the box:

استخدم الأوامر لإظهار ما يجب أو لا يجب عليك فعله داخل الحديقة ، باستخدام كلمات من القائمة:

~~environment~~ – park – flowers – help – trash can

1. Keep the environment clean.
2. ....
3. ....
4. ....
5. ....

5 Look and read. Where does the tourist want to go?

انظر واقرأ. أين تريد ان تذهب السائحة:

Excuse me, how do I get to the museum from here?



Go straight, turn left at the end of the road and the museum is on your right.

Thank you very much!

6 Listen. Write the letters on the map.

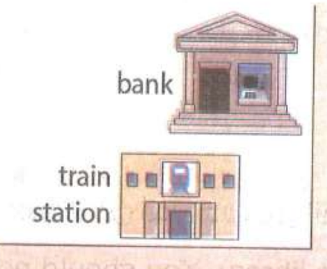
استمع . اكتب الحروف على الخريطة .

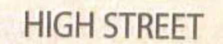




7 Look at the map. You are at the school. Ask for and give directions to different places with a partner.

انظر إلى الخريطة. أنت فى المدرسة. اسأل وأجب عن الاتجاهات إلى اماكن مختلفة مع زميلك.







STATION ROAD



MAIN STREET



school

PARK AVENUE







Excuse me, how do I get to the shopping mall?

Just cross the road!



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. We should encourage our .... to visit the library.

a sisters b children c parents d cousins

2. The children should keep the library ....

a bad b sad c clean d tall

3. They should ask the .... if they need help.

a farmer b teacher c librarian d mechanic

4. The children shouldn't run or make ....

a cakes b noise c books d pens

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

left - directions - straight - to

My friend Samy wanted to go to the museum. He had a map in his bag. He looked at the ❶ .... on the map. He went ❷ .... and turned ❸ .... at the end of the road. The museum was on his left.

بورسعيد - إدارة بورسعيد (2024)

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة القاهرة - إدارة المرج (2024)

There are some rules you must follow when you enter a library. You should not eat in the library. You have to bring your book back in two weeks. You need to drink your water outside. You can't use your cell phone here. You shouldn't lose your book. You should ask the librarian if you need help. Don't speak loudly because people are reading <u>**here**</u>.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You have to bring book back in .... weeks.

a one b two c three d four

2. The word "<u>**here**</u>" refers to the ....

a book b library c phone d water

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Why can't you speak loudly in the library? ------------------------

4. What should you do if you need help in the library? ------------------

5. What shouldn't you lose in the library? ------------------------

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. is - important - place - This - a very.

----

2. the library - , please - eat - in - Don't. الفيا - إدارة أبو قرقاص (2023)

----

3. go - Children's Library - Can - to - we - the? الشرقية - إدارة ههيا (2023)

----

4. your - outside - Drink - the library - water. كفر الشيخ - إدارة سيدى سالم (2024)

----

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Don't ------------ (wasting) your time. الشرقية - إدارة ههيا (2023)
2. ------------ (Keeps) quiet in the library. القاهرة - إدارة حدائق القبة (2024)
3. Go straight. It's ------------ (in) the left.
4. Please, ------------ (drinks) water outside.
5. ------------ (Doesn't) eat in the library.
6. ------------ (Turns) right. My school is on the left.
7. Don't ------------ (talks) loudly, please. الفيوم - إدارة أبشواي (2024)
8. Don't ------------ (writing) in the books.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

how can i get to the bank ------------------------

7 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Library rules

Guiding phrases

not eat in the library - walk quietly

Lesson 3 Gabi Learns A Lesson

Key vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات:

recognize	يتعرف على	entertain	يرفه / يسلي
lost	تائه	creature	مخلوق
strange-looking	غريب المظهر	foolish	أحمق
tell the truth	يقول الحقيقة	apologize	يعتذر

Other words كلمات أخرى

villager	قروى (أحد سكان القرية)	even	حتى
walk far	يمشي بعيدًا	unkindly	بطريقة غير لطيفة
sacks of beans	أكياس الفاصوليا	crowds	عدد كبير من الناس (حشود)
road	طريق	dark	مظلم
ibis	طائر أبو منجل	enormous	هائل / كبير جدًا
land	الأرض	jerboa	حيوان الجربوع
branches	أغصان / فروع	rudely	بوقاحة
anyway	على أي حال	sounds	أصوات
snake	ثعبان	traders	التجار

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض
apologize	يعتذر	apologized
decide	يقرر	decided
look at	ينظر الي	looked at
recognize	يتعرف على	recognized
turn	يلتفت	turned
walk far	يمشي بعيدا	walked far
watch	يشاهد	watched
pretend	يتظاهر	pretended

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض
begin	يبدأ	began
fly	يطير	flew
hear	يسمع	heard
know	يعرف	knew
say	يقول	said
see	يري	saw
sell	يبيع	sold
understand	يفهم	understood

Study the following

1. Which animal does Gabi meet first? ما الحيوان الذي التقى به جابي أولاً؟
2. I will take them to the market for you. سوف آخذهم إلى السوق من أجلك.
3. He turned left and then right. استدار يسارًا ثم يمينًا.
4. Are you lost? هل أنت تائه؟
5. The ibis could fly high above the land and tell him the way. استطاع طائر أبو منجل أن يطير عالياً فوق الأرض ويخبره بالطريق.
6. Gabi saw a snake, watching him from the branches of a tree. رأى جابي ثعبانًا يراقبه من أغصان شجرة.
7. He wasn't telling the truth. لم يكن يقول الحقيقة.
8. The snake went to the market every day to entertain the crowds. ذهب الثعبان إلى السوق كل يوم للترفيه عن الحشود.
9. Look at those enormous ears. انظر إلى تلك الآذان الضخمة.
10. Do you need any help? هل تحتاج إلى أي مساعدة؟
11. The jerboa could hear the sounds of the market traders. استطاع الجربوع سماع أصوات تجار السوق.
12. He knew he was foolish and he was sorry. كان يعلم أنه أحمق وكان نادمًا.
13. He decided to go to sleep, and to apologize and ask for their help the next day. قرر أن ينام، وأن يعتذر ويطلب مساعدتهم في اليوم التالي.
14. Was Gabi right to behave in this way? هل كان جابى على حق فى التصرف بهذه الطريقة؟

1 Listen, and read. Which animal does Gabi meet first?

استمع واقرأ:

Tapescript نص الاستماع





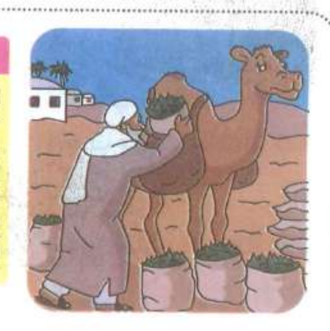
استمع إلى النص:

One day, a **villager** (1) wanted to sell his beans in the **market** (2), but he couldn't walk far. His camel, Gabi, said, "Give me the **sacks of beans** (3) - I will take them to the market for you."

Gabi walked **along** (4) the **road** (5). He turned left and then right and then left again. Soon, Gabi didn't **recognize** (6) the road.

Arabic Meaning

١- قروي
٢- سوق
٣- أكياس الفاصوليا
٤- بمحاذاة
٥- طريق
٦- يتعرف على

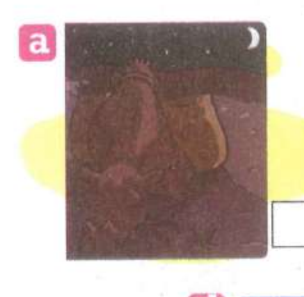


"Are you **lost** (7)?" called an **ibis** (8). Gabi had never seen such a **strange-looking** (9) bird.
"No, I'm not lost," **pretended** (10) Gabi. Gabi didn't know that the ibis could fly high above the land and tell him the way.
Gabi saw a snake, watching him from the **branches** (11) of a tree.
"You look lost," said the snake.
"No, I'm not," said Gabi - again he wasn't **telling the truth** (12).
"**Anyway** (13), **even** (14) if I was, you can't help - you haven't even got legs," he said **unkindly** (15). Gabi didn't know that the snake went to the market every day to **entertain** (16) the **crowds** (17).
It began to get **dark** (18). Gabi saw a little animal on the road in front of him.
"What a funny-looking **creature** (19). Look at those **enormous** (20) ears," he thought to himself.
"Hello," said the **jerboa** (21). "Do you need any help?"
"No, I don't!" replied Gabi **rudely** (22). Gabi didn't know that the jerboa could hear the **sounds** (23) of the market **traders** (24).
"OK, good night then," called the jerboa.
Soon, it was completely dark and Gabi understood he needed the animals' help. He knew he was **foolish** (25) and he was sorry. He decided to go to sleep, and to **apologize** (26) and ask for their help the next day.

٧- تائه
٨- أبو منجل
٩- غريب المظهر
١٠- تظاهر
١١- أغصان/فروع
١٢- يقول الحقيقة
١٣- على أي حال
١٤- حتى
١٥- بطريقة غير لطيفة
١٦- يسلي
١٧- الحشود
١٨- مظلم
١٩- مخلوق
٢٠- هائل/كبير جدًا
٢١- الجربوع
٢٢- بوقاحة
٢٣- أصوات
٢٤- التجار
٢٥- أحمق
٢٦- يعتذر

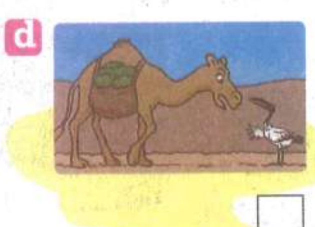
2 Read the story again. Put the pictures in the correct order:

أقرأ القصة مرة أخرى. رتب الصور:

a  ☐

b  1

c  ☐

d  ☐

e  ☐

3 Read the story again. Complete the sentences with the words in the box:

اقرأ القصة مرة أخرى. أكمل الجمل بالكلمات الموجودة فى القائمة :

fly – hear – help – snake

1. At the start, Gabi offered to .... the villager.
2. The ibis could help because he could .... over the land.
3. The .... could help because he went to the market every day.
4. The jerboa could help because he could .... very well.

4 Read and think. Talk to your partner:

اقرأ وفكر. تحدث مع زميلك :

1. Why do you think that Gabi did not tell the truth to any of the animals?
   - a He didn't want anyone to know that he was lost.
   - b He was angry.
   - c He was clever.
2. Was Gabi right to behave in this way?
   - a Yes, because he didn't need help.
   - b No, because he wasn't telling the truth.
   - c Yes, because the villager told him to go alone.
3. What lesson did Gabi learn at the end of the story?
   - a You shouldn't talk to strangers.
   - b Being rude is important.
   - c Asking for help is good.

Pronunciation

◉ الإدغام diphthong في علم الصوتيات يعني دمج صوتين متحركين في مقطع صوتي واحد.

1 Listen and repeat: استمع وكرر:

/əʊ/	go يذهب	show يبين/ عرض	below اسفل	wrote كتب	grow يزرع/ ينمو
/aɪ/	bite يعض	right صحيح/ يمين	bike دراجة	write يكتب	time وقت
/ɔɪ/	boy ولد	toy لعبة	coin عملة معدنية	enjoy يستمتع بـ	point يشير
/eɪ/	make يصنع	play يلعب	eight ثمانية	bake يخبز	ache ألم

◉ أحيانا يتم نطق نفس الصوت بطرق مختلفة مثلما في كلمتي eight & ate

2 Look at the table. Listen again and say:

انظر للجدول. استمع مرة أخرى وقل:

1. go	2. bite	3. boy	4. make
show	right	toy	play

3 Listen and say. Write the words in the correct places in the table:

استمع وقل. اكتب الكلمات فى المكان الصحيح فى الجدول (أعلاه):

1. ache	2. below	3. eight	4. bake	5. coin	6. time
7. grow	8. bike	9. enjoy	10. wrote	11. write	12. point

4 Choose the correct word from the table above:

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة من الجدول أعلاه:

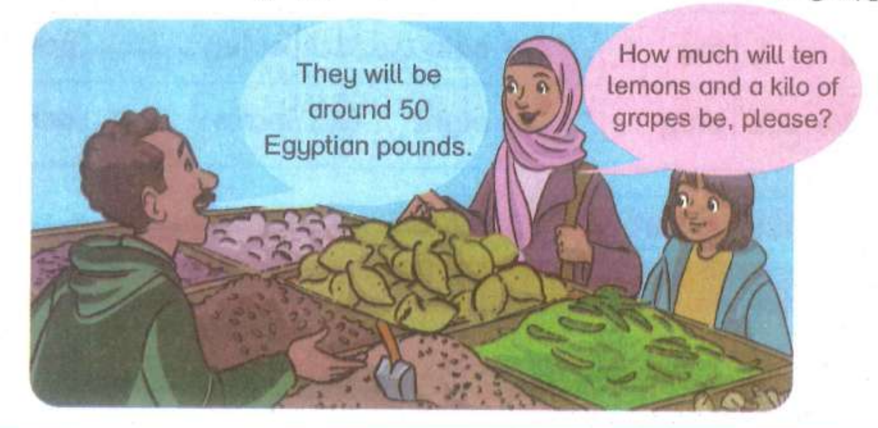
grow - eight - ache - make

1. I have a bad tooth ....
2. Look! There are .... trees in the garden.
3. Let's .... a cake for my birthday!
4. Does the farmer .... vegetables?

CLIL: MATH

الإجابة التقديرية أو التقريبية "estimated answer" ليست الإجابة الفعلية وإنما تعد تخميناً جيداً. على سبيل المثال، إذا قمنا بإضافة العدد ١٧ إلى العدد ١٢ فأنت تعلم أن الإجابة هي "قريبة من" ٣٠ وليست قريبة من ٦٠. هناك بعض المصطلحات التي يمكن أن نستخدمها في اللغة الإنجليزية للتعبير عن الإجابة التقديرية يمكنك أن تقول:

- It's about ... إنه حوالي ...
- It's around ... إنه حوالي ...
- It's close to ... إنه قريب من ...
- It's near ... إنه قريب من ...



5 Look quickly and circle the correct estimated answer:

انظر بسرعة وضع دائرة حول الإجابة التقريبية الصحيحة:

1. 34 + 47 = 60 - 80 - 120
2. 77 + 120 = 80 - 130 - 200
3. 338 + 336 = 480 - 680 - 980
4. 1050 + 50 + 104 = 1000 - 1200 - 2000
5. 17 + 39 + 44 + 308 = 300 - 400 - 500

لتقدير حاصل جمع عددين أو ثلاثة أو أكثر يجب أن تحدد الرقم الأكبر فى كل عدد. لاحظ اولاً مكونات العدد.

7	4	5	1
آحاد	عشرات	مئات	آلاف

- فمثلا فى العددين: 27 / 36

ننظر للرقم الأكبر فى كل عدد حيث يمثل 2 عشرون فى 27 وتمثل 3 الرقم 30 فى 36 لذلك حاصل جمعهما سيزيد عن 50 ولن يصل إلى 70 إذا بالتقدير يصبح الناتج حوالى 60.

إذا طلب تقدير جمع 472 / 423 انظر إلى الرقم الأكبر وهو المئات ومجموعات المئات فى العددين يساوى 800 لذلك إذا طلب منك التقدير بناء على مجموع 72 / 23 بالتقريب يكون الناتج 900.



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

along - well - enormous - sounds

I buy everything for my mom from the market. I walk to the market because it is near my house. I walk ❶ ------------- the road. I know the road ❷ ------------. The market is very big. It's ❸ -------------. I find everything in this market.

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

An old man wanted to buy food for his family, but he couldn't go. He asked his little son, Sameh, to go to the market for him. Sameh accepted and went to the market. On his way to the market, **he** met an old woman who was carrying heavy bags. He offered to help her, and the woman accepted and she was very happy. At the end, the woman thanked Sameh for his help and gave him some apples.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Sameh was a ------------- boy.
   a bad   b busy   c good   d sad
2. The woman gave Sameh some -------------.
   a carrots   b tomatoes   c oranges   d apples

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What does the underlined pronoun "**he**" refer to? ----------------------
4. How did Sameh help the woman on his way? ----------------------
5. Why did the woman thank Sameh? ----------------------

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. telling - wasn't - He - the truth.

----

2. need - any - Do - help - you?   المنوفية - إدارة منوف (2024)

----

3. the - beans - sacks - Give - of - me.

----

4. first - did - Which - Gabi - animal - meet?

----

5. fly - land - The ibis - above - could - the. الدقهلية - إدارة غرب المنصورة (2024)

----

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. .... (Did) you lost, Walid?
2. Gabi was foolish and he .... (is) sorry.
3. Gabi offered to .... (helping) the villager.
4. The villager wanted to .... (sold) his beans. القاهرة - إدارة المطرية (2023)

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. are you lost ---
2. retaj and Karma went to the market ---

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Helping others

Guiding phrases

offer help - respect them

Key vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات:

tourist attractions	أماكن الجذب السياحي	zoo	حديقة حيوان
relaxing	مريح	markets	أسواق
delicious	لذيذ	restaurants	مطاعم
Cairo	القاهرة	shopping malls	مراكز التسوق
London	لندن	location	موقع
New York	نيويورك	history	التاريخ
waterpark	متنزه مائي	culture	الحضارة / الثقافة
park	حديقة عامة	arts	الفنون

Other words كلمات أخرى



Buckingham Palace	قصر باكنجهام	bridges	كباري
theaters	المسارح	walking around	التجول
British Museum	المتحف البريطاني	worry	قلق
boat trip	رحلة بالقارب	plenty	الكثير
middle	منتصف / وسط	treasures	كنوز
International Park	الحديقة الدولية	New Alamein	مدينة العلمين الجديدة
shade	ظل	picnic	نزهة خلوية
the River Thames	نهر التايمز		

Adjectives صفات



amazing	مذهل	fun	مرح / مَمْتع
beautiful	جميل	large	كبير
cool	رائع	negative	سلبي
exciting	مثير	positive	إيجابي
famous	مشهور	perfect	مثالي
fascinating	جذاب / ساحر	wonderful	رائع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض
rain	تمطر	rained
visit	يزور	visited
like	يحب	liked
encourage	يشجع	encouraged

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض
see	يرى	saw
take	يأخذ	took
choose	يختار	chose
feed	يطعم	fed

Study the following

1 This is one of the most exciting cities in the world.
هذه واحدة من أكثر المدن إثارة في العالم.

2 It often rains here, but it doesn't matter.
غالبًا ما تمطر هنا، لكن لا يهم.

3 There are lots of fun things to do.
يوجد الكثير من الأشياء الممتعة التي يمكنك القيام بها.

4 You can take a relaxing boat trip on the River Thames
يمكنك القيام برحلة مريحة بالقارب على نهر التايمز.

5 There are plenty of different restaurants to choose from.
يوجد الكثير من المطاعم المختلفة للاختيار من بينها.

6 You can find delicious food from all over the world here!
يمكنك أن تجد هنا طعامًا لذيذًا من جميع أنحاء العالم.

7 There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein.
يوجد العديد من الأشياء المثيرة التي يمكنك القيام بها في العلمين الجديدة.

8 The city is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot.
المدينة على الشاطئ لذا يمكنك زيارة البحر البارد عندما يكون الجو حارًا.

9 You can visit the beautiful International Park.
يمكنك زيارة الحديقة الدولية الجميلة.

10 There are some amazing treasures there.
يوجد بعض الكنوز المدهشة.

11 I can't wait to see you in New Alamein.
لا استطيع الانتظار لرؤيتك في العلمين الجديدة.

12 There is a big zoo right next to the school.
توجد حديقة حيوانات كبيرة بجوار المدرسة.

13 We can help to feed the animals.
يمكننا المساعدة في إطعام الحيوانات.

14 There is a waterpark that is always open.
يوجد حديقة مائية مفتوحة دائمًا.

15 It's free to go in!
الدخول مجاني!

16 There is a wonderful market that sells all kinds of delicious food.
يوجد سوق رائع يبيع جميع أنواع الأطعمة اللذيذة.

17 This is our perfect town!
هذه مدينتنا المثالية!

1 Read. Which place is the writer describing? Check (√) the correct photo below:

اقرأ. أي الأماكن يصفها الكاتب؟ ضع علامة (√) على الصورة الصحيحة أسفل:

Tapescript  نص الاستماع

 استمع إلى النص:

This is one of the most exciting (1) cities in the world. It often rains here, but it doesn't matter (2) because there are lots of fun things to do. You can go on a big red bus and visit amazing tourist attractions (3). You will see famous places like Buckingham Palace, theaters, and the British Museum (4). You can take a relaxing (5) boat trip on the River Thames (6) and go under the famous bridges (7). All the walking around will make you hungry! But don't worry, there are plenty (8) of different restaurants to choose from. You can find delicious food from all over the world here!

Arabic Meaning

١- مثير
٢- لا يهم
٣- الجذب السياحي
٤- المتحف البريطاني
٥- مريح
٦- نهر التايميز
٧- كباري مشهورة
٨- الكثير

☐ a Cairo


☐ b New York


☐ c London

2 Look and find. Are the adjectives positive or negative? Why?

انظر وأوجد. هل الصفات إيجابية أم سلبية؟ لماذا؟

1. Find an adjective that describes the city ....
2. Find an adjective that describes the boat trip. ....
3. Find an adjective that describes the food. ....

Tip!

When you are trying to encourage people to go to a place, use positive adjectives to describe the place.

عندما تحاول تشجيع الناس على الذهاب إلى مكان ما، استخدم الصفات الإيجابية لوصف المكان.



How to write a descriptive paragraph
كيفية كتابة فقرة وصفية

You are going to write a description of your town or city. You want to encourage people to visit it. Write notes about the good things about your town or city. Think about famous attractions:

سوف تكتب وصفًا لمدينتك أو بلدتك، وتريد تشجيع الناس على زيارتها. اكتب ملاحظات عن الأشياء الجيدة عن بلدتك أو مدينتك. فكر في معالم الجذب الشهيرة. ضع الآتى فى الاعتبار:

- famous attractions — أماكن جذب شهيرة
- location - is it near a beach / river? — الموقع هل هي قريبة من الشاطئ / النهر؟
- history — التاريخ
- culture — الثقافة / الحضارة
- arts — الفنون

3 Read the paragraph about New Alamein. Underline the adjectives:

اقرأ الفقرة القادمة عن مدينة العلمين الجديدة. ضع خط تحت الصفات:


استمع إلى النص:

NEW ALAMEIN



There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein[1]. The city is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. This beautiful beach is 14 kms long! There is also a large, green lake right in the middle[2] of the city! You can also visit the beautiful International Park[3]. If you want to learn about the fascinating history[4] of the area, then visit the Archaeological Center[5]. There are some amazing treasures[6] there. I can't wait to see you in New Alamein.

Arabic Meaning

١- العلمين الجديدة
٢- وسط
٣- الحديقة الدولية
٤- التاريخ
٥- المركز الأثري
٦- كنوز



How to make a poster about your perfect town
كيف تصنع ملصق عن مدينتك المثالية؟

Make a poster about your perfect town. Think about the types of places that you want in your perfect town. Here are some ideas

اصنع ملصق عن مدينتك المثالية. فكر في أنواع الأماكن التي تريدها في مدينتك المثالية. إليك بعض الأفكار:

a waterpark	متنزه مائي
a park	حديقة عامة
a zoo	حديقة حيوان
markets	أسواق
restaurants	مطاعم
shopping malls	مراكز التسوق

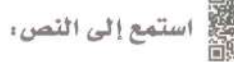
4 Read and do:
اقرأ وأفعل:

1. Look at the poster. Study the heading, text, and pictures.

انظروا إلى الملصق. ادرسوا العنوان والنص والصور.

2. Think about your poster. What will you include? فكروا في ملصقكم. ماذا سيتضمن؟
3. Decide who will do what. Do your research. قرروا من سيفعل ماذا. قوموا بالبحث.
4. Work together to make your poster. Check your work at the end.

اعملوا سويًا لصنع الملصق. تأكدوا من عملكم في النهاية.





1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Nadia lives in a small ....

a village b town c city d hotel

2. Nadia lives with her ....

a friends b parents c uncles d aunts

3. Nadia likes to play with her .... after school.

a toys b friends c parents d cousins

4. There is a .... next to Nadia's house.

a park b waterpark c museum d hotel

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

most - fun - Tower - bridge

I'm Hossam. I live in Cairo. It's a big city. It's one of the ❶ .... exciting cities in the world. There are lots of ❷ .... things to do. You can visit the Cairo ❸ .... It's very high.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة: قنا - إدارة الوقف (2023)

New Alamein is a beautiful city. There are many exciting things in it. The city is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when it is hot. The beautiful beach is 14 kms long. There is also a **large** lake in it. You can also visit the beautiful International Park. You can visit the Archaeological Center if you want to learn about the fascinating history of the area. There are some amazing treasures there.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**large**" means ....

a clean b tiny c small d big

2. New Alamein is on the .... of the sea.

a beach b desert c park d lake

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What can you see in the Archaeological Center? ----------------------
4. How long is the beach of the city? ----------------------
5. Summarize the paragraph in one sentence. ----------------------

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. you - do - **What** - in - can - New Alamein? ----------------------
2. any - amazing - **Are** - treasures - there? ---------------------- المنيا - إدارة ملوى (2024)
3. find - here - **You** - delicious - can - food. ----------------------
4. one - cities - of - **This is** - the most - exciting. ----------------------

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. where do you live, tarek?

----

2. Dalia and mona went to the park

----

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

الإسماعيلية - إدارة فايد (2024)

مجاب آخر الوحدة

London

Guiding phrases

most exciting - different restaurants

Review

Places



bank
بنك



factory
مصنع



monument
نُصب تذكاري / أثر



library
مكتبة



shopping mall
مول تجاري



square
ميدان



station
محطة



museum
متحف



market
سوق



beach
شاطئ



supermarket
سوبر ماركت



hotel
فندق



restaurant
مطعم

mint tea	شاي بالنعناع
local cuisine	مأكولات / أطباق محلية
shopping	التسوق
spend ages	يقضي الكثير من الوقت
originally	أصلا / فى الأصل
on vacation	في إجازة
apologize	يعتذر
tourist attractions	أماكن الجذب السياحي
relaxing	مريح
delicious	لذيذ
Cairo	القاهرة
London	لندن

New York	نيويورك
waterpark	متنزه مائي
recognize	يتعرف على
lost	تائه
strange-looking	غريب المظهر
tell the truth	يقول الحقيقة
entertain	يرفه / يسلي
location	موقع
history	التاريخ
culture	الحضارة / الثقافة
arts	الفنون
environment	البيئة

Help your child revise unit 10 .
ساعد طفلك يراجع الوحدة العاشرة.

Adjectives صفات

exciting	مثير	negative	سلبي
famous	مشهور	positive	إيجابي
fascinating	رائعة	perfect	مثالي
fun	ساحر / جذاب	wonderful	رائع
cool	رائع	large	كبير

Other words كلمات أخرى



traditions	تقاليد	traders	التجار
Alexandria Library	مكتبة الإسكندرية	Buckingham Palace	قصر باكنجهام
sacks of beans	أكياس الفاصوليا	British Museum	المتحف البريطاني
ibis	طائر أبو منجل	International Park	الحديقة الدولية
branches	أغصان / فروع	Archaeological center	المركز الأثرى
crowds	الحشود	shade	ظل
enormous	هائل	it doesn't matter	لا يهم
jerboa	حيوان الجربوع	treasures	كنوز
rudely	بوقاحة	New Alamein	مدينة العلمين الجديدة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
serve	يقدم طعام	served
remind	يُذكّر	reminded
borrow	يستعير	borrowed
own	يملك	owned
push	يضغط / يدفع	pushed
turn	يستدر	turned
cross	يعبر	crossed
hurry	يسرع	hurried
recognize	يتعرف على	recognized
pretend	يتظاهر	pretended
encourage	يشجع	encouraged

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
find out	يكتشف	found out
show	يبين	showed
stand	يقف	stood
choose	يختار	chose
write	يكتب	wrote
lose	يفقد	lost
feed	يطعم	fed
take	يأخذ	took
fly	يطير	flew
hear	يسمع	heard

Grammar قواعد لغوية

1 Imperative الأمر

- نستخدم صيغة الأمر لاعطاء تعليمات بفعل أو عدم فعل شيء.
- لاحظ لا تبدأ الجملة الأمرية بفاعل subject ولكن تبدأ بالفعل في المصدر:
- لا يأتى بعد فعل الامر حرف جر (to).

- اولاً الأمر المثبت:

Inf مصدر الفعل + باقى الجملة.

- Do your homework.

- يمكن أن يأتى قبل الفعل كلمات تدل على الطلب المهذب أو اسم شخص:

- Please, open the window.
- Ali, close the window.

- ثانيًا الامر المنفى:

Don't / Never + inf مصدر الفعل + باقى الجملة.

- Don't play in the street.
- Never come to school late.

2 Giving directions إعطاء الاتجاهات

- للسؤال عن الاتجاهات هناك عدة طرق وهى:

1 Excuse me, how do I get to + اسم المكان?

- معذرة، كيف يمكننى أن أصل إلى.........؟

2 Is there (اسم المكان) near here?

- هل يوجد (اسم المكان) بالقرب من هنا؟

3 Where is (اسم المكان), please?

- أين يوجد (اسم المكان) من فضلك؟

- Excuse me, how do I get to the park?
- Is there a park near here?
- Where is the park, please?

- للإجابة على هذه الأسئلة نستخدم صيغة الأمر لإعطاء التعليمات ووصف الاتجاهات:

- Turn right. استدر يمينًا.
- Cross the road. اعبر الشارع.
- Go straight. اذهب بطول.



Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

Lesson 1
A visit to Alexandria

1. Last week was my holiday. I went to Alexandria with my family. It's an exciting place to visit. My favorite place is the beach. We went to the beach and had a great time. I swam and played football with my brothers.

Lesson 2
Library rules

2. At the library, we should respect the rules. We should put the books on the shelf. We should walk quietly. We should not eat in the library. We should not use our cell phones there. We should not talk loudly.

Lesson 3
Helping others

3. We should be helpful. We should offer help to anyone carrying heavy bags. We should also help old people. If a person is poor and needs money, we should give him money. If a person is hungry, we should give him food.

Lessons 4 & 5
London

4. London is one of the most exciting cities in the world. There are some amazing tourist attractions. You can take a relaxing boat trip on the River Thames and go under the famous bridges. There are plenty of different restaurants and you can eat delicious food from all over the world.

Test - Unit 10
My city

5. I like my city, Alexandria very much. It's very clean and beautiful. The people in the city are very friendly. There are many places to visit. There are big markets, shopping malls, schools and hospitals. I love my beautiful city.

Al-Azhar Test

اختبار خاص بالأزهر الشريف

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Yesterday,I visited Alexandria with my .... (brothers - teachers - friends)
2. Alexandria is a big .... (town - city - village)
3. There's even a .... (beach - river - lake)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ و أكمل المحادثة:

Library - What - reading - going

A : Where are the children ❶ ....?

B : They are going to Alexandria ❷ ....

A : ❸ .... are they doing?

B : They are ❹ .... stories.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the questions: أقرا و اجب عن الأسئلة:

Uncle Mahmoud has a big house with a beautiful garden outside the house. He has no children, but he has two pets. He likes keeping pets and he looks after them very well. He has a dog called "Lion" and a cat called "Pos Pos" .Uncle Mahmoud feeds his pets every day. He is a kind man.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. Does uncle Mahmoud have children?
2. What does uncle Mahmoud like keeping?

B - Choose the correct answer:

3. Uncle Mahmoud has a beautiful garden .... the house. (outside - inside - under)
4. He has a dog called .... (Tiger - Lion - Fox)
5. Uncle Mahmoud feeds his pets every .... (day - week - year)

D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Alexandria is a big ....

a farm b park c city

2. Come and .... lunch with us.

a having b had c have

3. I visited Buckingham .... last year.

a Palace b Museum c Park

4. We .... keep the environment clean.

a can't b should c shouldn't

5. I saw beautiful .... at the museum.

a monuments b cusines c malls

5 Read and reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اقرأ و اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملا صحيحة:

1. be - tomorrow - Don't - late.

....

2. your - in - money - Keep - a bank.

....

3. do - How - the - I - get to - station?

....

4. there - Is - a factory - here - near?

....

5. Library - is - the - This - Alexandria.

....



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Hisham goes to Alexandria with his ....

a toys b family c friends d books

2. Alexandria is a very .... city.

a big b tall c small d old

3. Hisham stays in a hotel near the ....

a beach b train station c park d school

4. Hisham has lunch at the ....

a party b restaurant c beach d station

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A: .... do you get to school? B: Go straight on. الإسكندرية - إدارة برج العرب (2023)

a How b When c What d Who

2. Don't use your .... phone in the library.

a call b cell c book d toy

3. .... left, the supermarket is on the corner. المنوفية - إدارة أشمون (2023)

a Catch b Turn c Use d Work

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

international - beach - hot - middle

New Alamein is a city in north of Egypt. There are many exciting things to do. The city is on the 1 ...., so you can visit the cool sea when it's 2 .... This beautiful beach is 14 kms long! There is also a large green lake right in the 3 .... of the city.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة

Hi friends! My name is Mai and I live in Ras El-Bar. It isn't a very big town near the sea. About 10,000 people live here. There are about thirty shops in Ras El-Bar and there are three supermarkets. In my town, you can get everything you need. There are five banks and a post office. There is a police station and a library. I usually go to the market with my mom.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of this passage is about ....
   a Mai's family   b Ras El-Bar   c the sea   d the shops
2. Mai lives in a .... town.
   a small   b big   c large   d cute

B- Answer the following questions:

3. How many people live in Ras El-Bar? ....
4. What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to? ....
5. Who did Mai usually go to the market with? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. quiet - in - You - be - should - the library. .... الفيوم - إدارة أطسا (2024)
2. tourist - Egypt - many - has - attractions. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. .... (Didn't) talk loudly, please.
2. How do I .... (got) to the museum? الإسكندرية - إدارة برج العرب (2023)

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. which place would you like to visit ....
2. There s a hospital near here .... الغربية - إدارة طنطا (2024)

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

My city

Guiding phrases

many places - beautiful city

....

....



Being responsible

Vacations

العطلات



Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about vacations

-يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويجري بحثا ويكتب عن العطلات.

2. Think about environmental responsibility.

-يفكر الطالب في المسئولية البيئية.

3. Practice using prepositions of time.

- يتدرب الطالب على استخدام حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت.

4. Listen to a conversation.

- يستمع الطالب إلى محادثة.

5. Learn about different types of triangles.

- يتعلم الطالب عن الأنواع المختلفة من المثلثات.

6. Read and say words with the "th" sound.

- يقرأ الطالب ويقول كلمات بها صوتth .

7. Think about my perfect vacation.

- يفكر الطالب فى عطلة مثالية.

8. Write a diary entry for my best day on vacation.

- يكتب الطالب تدوينة يومية عن أفضل يوم فى العطلة.

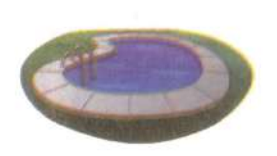
9. Make a poster for a vacation destination.

- يقوم الطالب بعمل ملصق عن وجهة الإجازة.

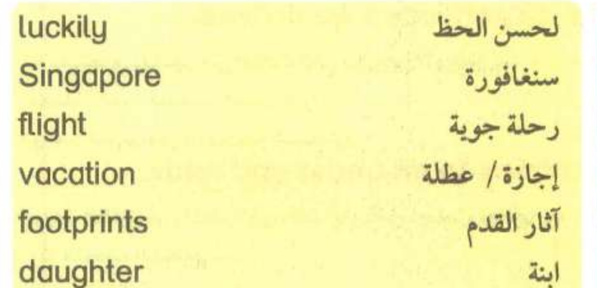
Lesson 1 ★ A world trip

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:

 hotel فندق	 suitcase حقيبة سفر	 swimming pool حمام سباحة	 high-rise building ناطحة سحاب
 theme park ملاهي	 ticket تذكرة	 beach شاطيء	 camera كاميرا
 city مدينة	 museum متحف	 airport مطار	 sunglasses نظارة شمس
	 tourist سائح	 passport جواز سفر	

Other words كلمات أخرى



luckily	لحسن الحظ	aloud	بصوت عال
Singapore	سنغافورة	degree	درجة الحرارة
flight	رحلة جوية	view	منظر
vacation	إجازة / عطلة	island	جزيرة
footprints	آثار القدم	son	ابن
daughter	ابنة	floor	طابق / دور في مبنى
husband	زوج	vanilla	فانيليا
gardens	منطقة حدائق	hotel room	حجرة فندقية

Important Phrases عبارات مهمة

a business trip	رحلة عمل	in the middle of	في منتصف
a boat trip	رحلة (نزهة) بالقارب	by the Bay	بجوار الخليج
from all around the world	من جميع أنحاء العالم	a really special place	مكان مميز جدا

ADJECTIVES صفات

wonderful / lovely	رائع	busy	مزدحم
comfortable	مريح	huge	ضخم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض
arrive	يصل	arrived
visit	يزور	visited
relax	يستريح	relaxed
pack	يحزم (حقائب)	packed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض
spend	يقضي (وقت)	spent
fly	يطير / يسافر جوا	flew
take photos	يلتقط صور	took photos
leave	يغادر	left
sleep	ينام	slept

Study the following

1. They are on a business trip traveling around the world.
   - إنهم مسافرون حول العالم في رحلة عمل.
2. Luckily, we've got a lovely hotel room.
   - لحسن الحظ حصلنا على غرفة رائعة في فندق.
3. The view is beautiful and we can see the beach.
   - المنظر جميل ويمكننا أن نرى الشاطىء.
4. There's a huge swimming pool on the roof of the hotel!
   - يوجد حمام سباحة ضخم على سطح الفندق.
5. It didn't take long to get through the airport when we arrived.
   - لم نستغرق الكثير من الوقت لكي نمر من المطار عندما وصلنا.
6. We got our suitcases straight away.
   - حصلنا على حقائب السفر فورًا.
7. There are lots of high-rise buildings.
   - يوجد الكثير من ناطحات السحاب.
8. There are many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax.
   - يوجد الكثير من الحدائق والأشجار لكي نجلس تحتها ونستريح.
9. We visited the museum of ice cream!
   - زرنا متحف المثلجات.
10. I hope you are all well.
    - أتمنى أن تكونوا جميعًا بخير.
11. Now I have to find our tickets and passports and pack our suitcases again!
    - الآن يجب أن أجد تذاكري وجواز سفري وأحزم حقائبي مرة أخرى.



1 Listen and read. استمع واقرأ:

Where are Uncle Hani and Aunt Nadia now?

Today Mom received an email from her sister Nadia, and her husband Hani.They are on a business trip traveling around the world. Nadia and Hani were in India last week, and this week they are in Singapore. Mom is reading the email aloud to her daughter Rana and her son Ali.



Singapore City

Tapescript نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص:



To: Samiax@mail.com

Subject: My trip

Dear Samia,

Hello to you all from Singapore(1)! It's hot here - about 36 degrees(2). Luckily, we've got a lovely hotel(3) room. We're on the 42nd floor. The view is beautiful and we can see the beach. There's a huge swimming pool(4) on the roof of the hotel! Can you believe it? The flight(5) from India took about six hours, but it was comfortable(6) and we both slept. It didn't take long to get through(7) the airport when we arrived - we got our suitcases(8) straight away(9).

Singapore is a wonderful city. There are lots of high-rise buildings (10), but there are also many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax. The Gardens by the Bay (11) is a really special place where there are flowers and plants from all around the world. We spent a lot of time there. You really forget that you're in the middle(12) of a busy city.

Yesterday, we went on a boat trip with some other tourists to an island. There is a theme park(13). It was so much fun! After that, we visited the museum(14) of ice cream! I had a 'Queen Bee' ice cream which is vanilla and honey with chocolate. It was great!

I hope you are all well. We will fly to Japan (15) tomorrow and I'll send you another email when we arrive. Now I have to find our tickets(16) and passports(17) and pack(18) our suitcases again!

Love

Nadia

Arabic Meaning

١- دولة سنغافورة
٢- درجات حرارة
٣- فندق
٤- حمام سباحة
٥- رحلة جوية
٦- مريح
٧- يمر عبر
٨- حقائب سفر
٩- على الفور
١٠- ناطحات سحاب
١١- خليج
١٢- في منتصف
١٣- ملاهي
١٤- متحف
١٥- دولة اليابان
١٦- تذاكر
١٧- جوازات سفر
١٨- يحزم (حقائب)



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Osama went to ____________ last month.
   a Cairo b Dubai c Alexandria d Luxor
2. There are many ____________ buildings.
   a short b high-rise c fair d small
3. Osama went on a ____________ trip.
   a car b boat c bike d taxi
4. Osama went on rides at the theme ____________ .
   a building b park c house d wheels

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. There is a ____________ park in my town. الإسكندرية - إدارة الجمرك (2024)
   a same b theme c boat d thing
2. When you need to travel around the world, you need a ____________ .
   a password b passport c museum d message
3. Tourists usually stay in ____________ on vacation.
   a museums b zoos c suitcases d hotels
4. I like going to the club and swim in the ____________ .
   a city b swimming pool c hotel d airport
5. When we travel, we put our clothes in a ____________ . أسيوط - إدارة البدارى (2023)
   a passport b ticket c suitcase d camera

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار: القليوبية - إدارة بنها (2024)

travel - trip - happy - sad

Today, my sister received an email. It's from her husband, Alaa. He is on a business (1) __________ traveling around the Arab world. She was very (2) __________ to know Alaa's news. This week he is in Kuwait. Next week, he will (3) __________ to Qatar to complete his business there and then return to Egypt.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. vacation - on - take - do - you - What? الغربية - إدارة زفتى (2024)

----

2. you - Can - it - believe?

----

3. a boat - went - trip - We - on.

----

4. you - well - I - are - all - hope.

----

5. our tickets - have to - and - I - find - passports.

----

6. got - We've - hotel - a lovely - room. القليوبية - إدارة كفر شكر (2024)

----

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. we will fly to Japan tomorrow كفر الشيخ - إدارة دسوق (2024)

----

2. do Amr and tamer go to Singapore?

----

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

My trip to Singapore

Guiding phrases

a lovely hotel - lots of high rise buildings

Lesson 2 A special trip

Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات:

check in	يسجل وصوله للفندق	diary entry	تدوينة في المفكرة اليومية
traditional	تقليدي	wander	يتجول
day trip	رحلة نهارية (في النهار)	handicrafts / crafts	مصنوعات يدوية
diary	مفكرة يومية	stalls	أكشاك

Other words كلمات أخرى

leaflet	منشور / كراسة دعائية	meeting	مقابلة
tour	جولة	skin	جلد
mud	وحل / طين	chance	فرصة
exploring	استكشاف	destination	جهة الوصول
culture	حضارة / ثقافة	midnight	منتصف الليل
trading center	مركز تجاري	tour guide	مرشد سياحي
rug	سجادة	archaeological	أثري
on the way	في الطريق	arts and crafts	فنون وحرف
idea	فكرة	museum	متحف
home	وطن	Jordan	الأردن
the Roman Amphitheater	المدرج الروماني	Jordanian	اردني
Amman Citadel	قلعة عمان	the Dead Sea	البحر الميت
Abu Jaber Museum	متحف أبو جابر	appointment	موعد

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض
check in	يصل للفندق	checked in
head out	يتوجه إلى	headed out
float	يطفو	floated
walk around	يتجول في	walked around
discover	يكتشف	discovered
remind	يُذكّر	reminded

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض
buy	يشتري	bought
drive	يقود (سيارة)	drove
write down	يدون/ يسجل	wrote down
go back	يعود	went back
sell	يبيع	sold



Study the following

1. Enjoy some free time in the city. - استمتع ببعض وقت الفراغ في المدينة.
2. Today we enjoy a tour of Amman. - اليوم نستمتع بجولة في عمان.
3. Today we head out of the city for a day trip.
   - اليوم نتوجه إلى خارج المدينة في رحلة نهارية.
4. You will find lots of local Jordanian culture.
   - ستجد الكثير من الثقافة الأردنية المحلية.
5. No visit to Jordan is complete without a trip to the Dead Sea.
   - لا تكتمل زيارة الأردن بدون رحلة إلى البحر الميت.
6. There is so much salt in this sea. - يوجد الكثير جدا من الملح في هذا البحر.
7. We leave at 11 am to drive three hours back to Amman.
   - نغادر الساعة ١١ صباحا لنقود سيارة لمدة ٣ ساعات عائدين إلى عمان.
8. We will stop on the way for lunch. - سنتوقف في الطريق للغداء.
9. It only took an hour to reach our destination. - استغرقت ساعة فقط للوصول لوجهتنا.
10. Several people bought traditional Jordanian handicrafts from the stalls.
    - اشترى الكثير من الناس مصنوعات يدوية أردنية تقليدية من الأكشاك.
11. Today was the best day ever! - كان اليوم افضل يوم على الاطلاق.
12. We had the chance to wander through the streets.
    - اتيحت لنا الفرصة وتجولنا خلال الشوارع.
13. There is so much salt in the sea that you are able to float on the water.
    - يوجد ملح كثير جدًا فى البحر يمكنك من الطفو على الماء.



Definitions تعريفات

A diary	مفكرة يومية	is a book in which you write down things that happen to you each day.
A diary entry	تدوينة فى المفكرة	is a piece of writing in a diary.



Grammar
قواعد لغوية

Prepositions of time حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت

1 on

نستخدم حرف الجر **on** قبل أيام الأسبوع والمناسبات الخاصة والتواريخ المحددة:

- I go swimming **on** Mondays.
- I am having a party **on** my birthday.
- I was born **on** July 6th, 2010.

2 at

نستخدم حرف الجر **at** قبل الوقت وبعض العبارات:

- Our flight lands **at** 8 pm.
- We play basketball **at** lunchtime / **at** night.
- **at** midnight

3 in

نستخدم حرف الجر **in** قبل الشهور وفصول السنة والسنوات وأيضا أوقات اليوم:

- We visit our cousins **in** June.
- I was born **in** 2010.
- They arrived **in** the morning.
- **in** the afternoon / evening

لاحظ إذا جاء رقم بعد الشهر نستخدم **on** لأن هنا نقصد اليوم:

- My birthday is **on** October 11th.

1 Read, think, and say. What country would you like to visit? Why?

اقرأ وفكر وقل .ما الدولة التي تريد أن تزورها؟ ولماذا؟

I would like to visit Zambia because I want to see elephants and lions.



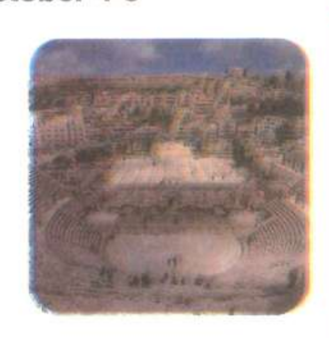
2 Listen and read the leaflet. How many museums can you visit on this trip?

استمع وأقرأ المنشور. كم عدد المتاحف التى يمكنك زيارتها فى هذه الرحلة؟

Tapescript  نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص: 

DESERT TOURS TRIP TO JORDAN October 4-8



Day 1: Arrive in Amman and check in(1) to our hotel in the middle of the city. Enjoy some free time in the city before meeting at the Memphis restaurant for a traditional(2) Jordanian dinner in the evening.

Day 2: Today we enjoy a tour of Amman. Visit the famous Amman Citadel(3) before exploring the Roman Amphitheater(4) and the Archaeological Museum(5). After a late lunch in a local restaurant, spend the afternoon and evening walking through Amman's many colorful markets(6).

Day 3: Today we head out of the city for a day trip(7) to As-Salt(8). About an hour away from Amman, in the ancient town of As-Salt you will find lots of local Jordanian culture. The markets are wonderful and there are many traditional arts and crafts(9) to buy. We will visit the Abu Jaber Museum and discover(10) the history(11) of As-Salt as Jordan's important trading center(12).



Day 4: No visit to Jordan is complete(13) without a trip to the Dead Sea(14). There is so much salt in this sea that you are able to float on the water! You can also enjoy the Dead Sea mud(15), which is very good for your skin.

Day 5: After enjoying a relaxed breakfast, we leave at 11am to drive three hours back to Amman. We will stop on the way for lunch before arriving at the airport(16) at 5 pm.

Arabic Meaning

١- يسجل وصول فندق
٢- تقليدى
٣- قلعة عمان
٤- المدرج الروماني
٥- المتحف الأثرى
٦- أسواق
٧- رحلة نهارية
٨- مدينة السلط (الأردن)
٩- فنون وحرف
١٠- يكتشف
١١- تاريخ
١٢- مركز تجاري
١٣- مكتمل
١٤- البحر الميت
١٥- طين
١٦- مطار

3 Read Nahla's diary entry. Which day is she describing? How do you know?

اقرأ تدوينة نهلة اليومية. أي يوم تصف؟ كيف تعرف؟



استمع إلى النص

Thursday,October 6th

Dear Diary,

Today was the best day ever!(1) I love anything(2) to do with history- I always go to the museum at home, so today was a special(3) day for me. The bus ride(4) wasn't too bad. It only took an hour to reach(5) our destination(6). I listened to music on the way and the time went quite(7) quickly. When we arrived, we had the chance to wander through(8) the streets and several(9) people bought traditional Jordanian handicrafts(10) from the stalls(11). I bought a lovely colorful rug(12). Saleh (our tour guide(13)) was very kind and took it to the bus for me so that I didn't have to carry it around! That was lucky because I spent hours in the museum!

Arabic Meaning

١- على الاطلاق
٢- أي شئ
٣- مميز
٤- جولة بالأتوبيس
٥- يصل إلى
٦- جهة الوصول
٧- إلى حد ما
٨- يتجول عبر
٩- عديد
١٠- مصنوعات يدوية
١١- أكشاك
١٢- سجادة
١٣- مرشد سياحي

4 Complete the sentences with at, on, or in:

أكمل الجمل بـ at/on/in

1- Dad is a baker. He works .... the mornings.

2- We go to the club .... Saturdays.

3- Does our next class start .... 2 pm?

4- Grandma was born .... 1962.

5- Reem's birthday is .... December 4th.

5 Complete the paragraph with at, on, or in:

أكمل الفقرة بـ at/on/in

❶ .... Monday, we arrived in Amman. The flight landed ❷ .... 4 o'clock ❸ .... the afternoon. It was about 26 degrees and I was surprised that it was so warm ❹ .... October. We went to our hotel and checked in. Our room was very comfortable. Later that evening, we had dinner at the Memphis restaurant in the city center. Amman is a really busy city ❺ .... night. We walked around the markets and bought some traditional handicrafts. We went back to our hotel ❻ .... about midnight.

6 Listen. Match the times with the speakers and activities:

استمع. وصل الأوقات مع المتحدثين وأنشطتهم (فى الصفحة القادمة):






Tapescript نص الاستماع

Narrator : 1

Boy 1 : Hi Ayman, do you want to play basketball after school on Thursday?

Ayman : On Thursday? I'm sorry, I can't, I go swimming on Thursdays.

Narrator : 2

Girl 1 : Hello Amira, shall we go shopping on the weekend?

Amira : Yes please, that sounds good!

Narrator : 3

Dad : Fareed, remember you have a dentist's appointment this afternoon.

Fareed : Oh yes, it's at five o'clock, isn't it?

Dad : Yes, that's right.

Fareed : OK, thanks Dad.

Narrator : 4

Mom : Talia, our flight leaves at 11 am.

Talia : OK, Mom, I'll be ready.

Narrator : 5

Sherif : Mom, remember I'm playing football with Ramy in the morning.

Mom : Oh, yes, that's fine, Sherif. Thanks for reminding me.

Narrator : 6

Sara : Mom, when are we visiting Grandma and Grandpa?

Mom : We're going in July, Sara. Not long now.

1 
Ayman

a- on the weekend



2 
Amira

b- at 11 am



3 
Fareed

c- in the morning



4 
Talia

d- on Thursday



5 
Sherif

e- in July



6 
Sara

f- at 5 pm





1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. .... visit many places in Egypt every year.
   a Friends   b Tourists   c Students   d Children
2. Tourists always want to check in a .... hotel.
   a tall   b small   c comfortable   d high
3. Tourists try traditional .... food.
   a Chinese   b American   c Egyptian   d French
4. Tourists like to go to Luxor and Aswan in ....
   a summer   b fall   c winter   d spring

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

special - history - trip - colorful

Yesterday, I went on a school trip. I went to the Egyptian Museum. I love learning about ❶............. Yesterday was a ❷............ day. I went by bus. The bus ride wasn't too bad. It was a good ❸............ . It was a great day.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. football - Ali - Mondays - on - plays. (الشرقية - إدارة بلبيس (2024))

   ....

2. stop - for lunch - We - on the way - will.

   ....

3. salt - is - the Dead Sea - There - in - so much. (المنوفية - إدارة الشهداء (2023))

   ....

4. visit - you - would - like to - What?

   ....

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. It rains .... (on) winter. الدقهلية - إدارة المنصورة (2024)
2. My sister's birthday is .... (at) March. الجيزة - إدارة العياط (2024)
3. We play basketball .... (on) lunchtime.
4. We have a party .... (in) August 15th.
5. They flew to Egypt .... (at) the evening.
6. We had science lessons .... (in) Thursdays.
7. My father went to the hospital .... (for) midnight. المنيا - إدارة ملوى (2023)
8. Our flight to London landed .... (on) nine o'clock. القاهرة - إدارة المطرية (2024)
9. Heba visited her grandma .... (in) the weekend.
10. I walk to school .... (by) the morning. القاهرة - إدارة السيدة زينب (2024)

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. i spent hours in the park

....

2. how many museums can you visit on this trip

....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

What you do at different times

Guiding phrases

go swimming - enjoy my day

....

....

....

Lesson 3 ★ Al-Azhar Park

Key vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات:

go on vacation	يذهب في إجازة	bench	مقعد طويل
a bit low	حزين أو محبط قليلا	awesome	مذهل

Other words كلمات أخرى



picnic	طعام مخصص للنزهة / نزهة	cousin	ابن - ابنة (العم-العمة / الخال-الخالة)
suddenly	فجأة	past	ماراً بـ/ عابراً
playground	ملعب	grass	عشب / حشائش
together	معًا / سوياً	meal	وجبة
show	عرض (مسرحي)	beach	شاطئ
year	عام / سنة	whole group	مجموعة كاملة
else	آخر / اضافي		

Adjectives صفات

possible	ممكن	cool	لطيف / بارد
interesting	ممتع / شيق	wonderful	مدهش
beautiful	جميل	fantastic	رائع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
phone	يتصل تليفونيًا	phoned
agree	يوافق	agreed
shout	يصيح	shouted
arrive	يصل	arrived
seem	يبدو	seemed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
come	يأتي	came
sit	يجلس	sat
find	يجد	found
think	يعتقد	thought
know	يعرف	knew



Study the following

1. It was a hot summer. – كان صيفًا حارًا.
2. School was over and he wanted to go on vacation. – الدراسة انتهت وأراد (سليم) أن يذهب في إجازة.
3. His cousin Sherif was away at the beach. – ابن عمه شريف كان بعيدًا بالشاطئ.
4. His family usually went on vacation. – عادة ما تذهب عائلته في إجازة.
5. They had to stay in Cairo. – كان يجب عليهم البقاء في القاهرة.
6. I'm feeling a bit low. – أشعر بالحزن قليلا.
7. I want to be at the beach. – أريد أن أكون على الشاطيء.
8. Can you come to the playground with us? – هل من الممكن أن تأتي معنا إلى الملعب؟
9. Why are you in the city? –لماذا أنت في المدينة؟
10. Mom sat on a bench and enjoyed all the beautiful plants and birds in the park. – جلست أمي على مقعد واستمتعت بكل النباتات والطيور الجميلة في المتنزه.
11. I think this is a fantastic place. – أعتقد أن هذا مكان رائع.
12. I can see there's a show next week. – أستطيع أن أرى أن هناك عرضا الأسبوع القادم.
13. It seemed that summer in the city would be awesome! – بدا أن ذلك الصيف في المدينة كان رائعًا.

1 Listen and read the story. Why did Seleem feel better at the end of the story?

استمع وأقرأ القصة. لماذا شعر سليم بأنه أفضل في آخر القصة؟

Tapescript



نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص:



Seleem was feeling sad. It was a hot summer, school was over and he wanted to go on vacation (1). His cousin Sherif was away at the beach and Seleem wanted to be there too. His family usually went on vacation with Sherif's family, but this year that wasn't possible (2) - Seleem's dad had a new job and they had to stay (3) in Cairo. Marwan, his friend, phoned him, "Hey, how are you, Seleem?" "I'm feeling a bit low (4) - I want to be at the beach," said Seleem.

Arabic Meaning

١- يذهب في إجازة
٢-ممكن
٣- يقيم/يبقى
٤- حزين قليلاً

"Well, this year you can't go, so let's find something else to do!" said Marwan. "I know, let's go to Al-Azhar Park."
"Hmm," said Seleem. "I don't know it, but it sounds[5] interesting!"
Seleem's mom agreed[6] to take them to the park. She made a picnic[7], so when they arrived, they sat under a big tree on the cool green grass[8] and enjoyed their food. It was such a beautiful day, and Marwan and Seleem played football. Suddenly Ramy and Maged, their friends from school, came running past.
"Hi Ramy!" shouted Seleem. "Why are you in the city? I thought[9] you were at the beach!"
"No," said Ramy. "My grandma's ill so Mom wanted to stay in Cairo. There's a whole group[10] of us who stayed at home and didn't travel. Can you come to the playground[11] with us?" Seleem asked his mom and they all went together[12] to the playground. Mom sat on a bench[13] and enjoyed all the beautiful plants and birds in the park.
"I think this is a fantastic place," said Mom at the end of the afternoon.
"I can see there's a show next week. Let's come back[14] with Dad, see the show, and have a meal[15] at the restaurant." Seleem felt very happy - now he knew his friends were in town and they had a wonderful park. It seemed[16] that summer in the city would be awesome[17]!

٥- يبدو
٦- وافق
٧- طعام النزهة
٨- عشب
٩- اعتقد
١٠- مجموعة كاملة
١١- ملعب/فناء
١٢- معًا
١٣- مقعد طويل
١٤- يعود
١٥- وجبة
١٦- بدا
١٧- مذهل

2 Read again and circle the correct answer:

اقرأ مرة اخرى وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة :

1- Seleem wasn't at school because
   a he was ill. b he was on vacation.
2- Why did Seleem not go to the beach?
   a Because his grandma was ill. b Because his dad had a new job.
3- Where did they eat in the park?
   a on the grass b at the restaurant
4- Who did Seleem and Marwan meet at the park?
   a friends from school b Sherif, Seleem's cousin
5- What did Seleem and his mom decide to do the following week?
   a come back with Seleem's friends b come back with Seleem's dad

Pronunciation

- سوف تتعرف في هذا الدرس على الفرق بين الاصوات /θ/ و/ð/ (th) sounds. لنطق حرفي (th) والرمز الصوتي الدال عليها.

To make the /ð/ and /θ/ sounds, press your tongue against your top teeth. The /θ/ sound is unvoiced, which means you should feel some air on your hand when you say it. With the /ð/ sound, there's no air, but you can feel a vibration on your neck.

- لكى تنطق هذه الأصوات يجب أن تضغط بلسانك على أسنانك العليا.
- هذا الصوت /θ/ يشبه حرف (ث) فى اللغة العربية وهو صوت لا تهتز به الاحبال الصوتية وهذا معناه أنك تشعر بهواء على يدك إذا قربتها من فمك عند خروج هذا الصوت.
- أما الصوت /ð/ يشبه حرف (ذ) فى اللغة العربية ولا يوجد هواء عند خروجه ولكن تشعر باهتزاز فى الأحبال الصوتية.

1 Listen and say these words:

استمع وقل هذه الكلمات:

/θ/		/ð/	
thing	شئ	these	هؤلاء
Thursday	يوم الخميس	those	أولئك
think	يعتقد	this	هذا
three	ثلاثة	with	مع
Earth	الأرض	mother	أم
author	مؤلف		

2 Say these words. Add them to the correct column in Exercise 1. Then listen and check:

قل هذه الكلمات. ضعهم فى الجدول الآتي حسب نطق حرفى (th) كما بالمثال:

bathroom - father - south - they - other - birthday - clothes - mouth - leather

th /θ/	th /ð/
bathroom	father

3 Look and write. Add the correct suffix to the words in brackets:

انظر واكتب. أضف النهاية الصحيحة للكلمات ما بين القوسين:

هناك بعض النهايات الشائعة التى تضاف للكلمات لتكوين الصفة مثل النهايات (ive / ous) فى الجدول الآتي:

Word orgin	أصل الكلمة	Adjective	الصفة
poison	سِمٌ	poisonous	سام
act	يتحرك	active	نشيط
fame	شهرة	famous	مشهور
expense	تكلفة	expensive	غالي الثمن
enormity	ضخامة / كِبَر	enormous	ضخم
danger	خطر	dangerous	خطير
create	يبدع	creative	مبدع

1- Be careful! That snake is .... (poison)

2- Ali swims and runs. He's very .... (act)

3- Everyone knows Soha. She is very .... (fame)

4- His watch is very .... (expense)



Many tourists come to visit Egypt and one of the most famous places is the Pyramids of Giza. All their sides are triangles. Let's learn more about triangles below.

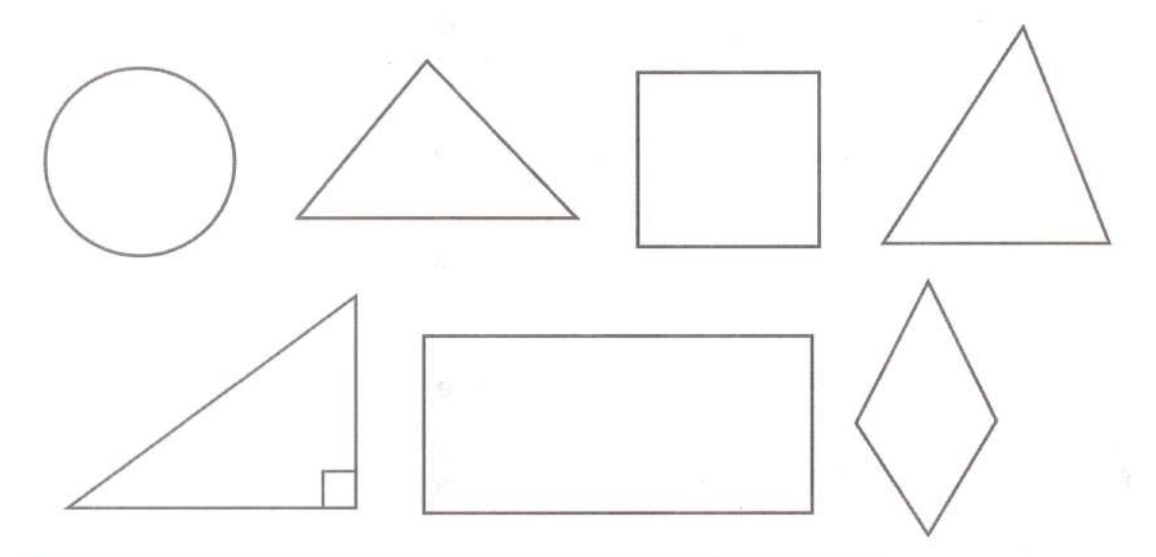
- يأتي الكثير من السياح ليزوروا مصر وواحدة من أكثر الأماكن شهرة هى أهرامات الجيزة ، كل جوانبها عبارة عن مثلثات.
- هيا نتعلم المزيد عن المثلثات بالأسفل.

An equilateral triangle		مثلث متساوي الأضلاع (أضلاعه الثلاثة متساوية)
A right angle triangle		مثلث قائم الزاوية (به زاوية قائمة ٩٠°)
An isosceles triangle		مثلث متساوي الساقين (به ضلعين متساويين)
A scalene triangle		مثلث مختلف الأضلاع (كل أضلاعه مختلفة في القياس)

1 Look and read. Color the triangles: انظر وأقرأ ولون المثلثات

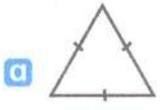
A triangle is a 2D shape with three sides.

المثلث هو شكل ثنائى الأبعاد ذو ثلاثة آضلاع.



2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

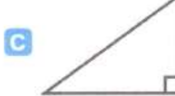
1- An equilateral triangle has three equal sides.

a 

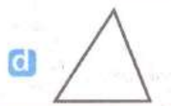
2- A right angle triangle has one angle that measures 90°.

b 

3- An isosceles triangle has two sides of equal length.

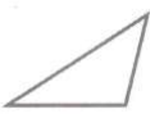
c 

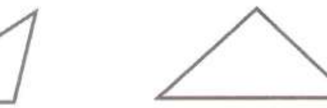
4- A scalene triangle has three sides of different length.

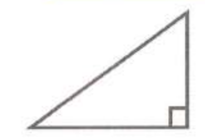
d 

3 Look. Circle the correct triangle type:

انظر وضع دائرة حول النوع الصحيح للمثلث:









1 right angle / scalene

2 isosceles / equilateral

3 right angle / isosceles

4 equilateral / scalene



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Hani can do a lot of activities on ....
   a vacation b buildings c parks d roofs
2. Hani goes to Alexandria in ....
   a winter b fall c summer d spring
3. They stay in a .... in front of the sea.
   a beach b hotel c house d park
4. They make sandcastles on the ....
   a road b street c beach d hotel

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. It was a wonderful city. It was ....
   a bad b ugly c awesome d sad
2. She went to the park, she .... a picnic. القاهرة - إدارة عابدين (2024)
   a did b played c made d stayed
3. Everyone knows Adel. He is very ....
   a active b famous c expensive d poisonous
4. Hana sat on a .... in the park. She enjoyed the beautiful plants.
   a bench b city c school d hotel
5. Nabil bought a very .... car last week. الإسكندرية - إدارة العامرية (2024)
   a poisonous b expensive c fame d enormity

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

أسوان - إدارة أدفو (2024)

1. feeling - I'm - low - a bit. ....
2. you - are - in - the - Why - city? ....
3. to - Park - go - Al-Azhar - Let's. ....
4. wanted - Hadi - to - vacation - on - go. ....
5. thought - I - were - the beach - you - on. ....

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Mrs Mona is a ------------- (fame) teacher in our school. القليوبية - إدارة شبين القناطر (2024)

2. I can't buy this mobile. It's very ------------- (expense) .

3. Mr Hany can do a lot of work. He is very ------------- (act) . الغربية - إدارة زفتى (2023)

4. Don't go near the lions. They are very ------------- (danger) animals.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. seleem felt very happy

----

2. can you come to the park with us

----

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Your visit to Al-Azhar Park

Guiding questions:

1- When did you go to Al-Azhar Park?
2- Who did you go with?

Lessons 4 & 5 Writing & project

Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات:

Morocco	المغرب	French	اللغة الفرنسية / شخص فرنسي
Marrakech	مدينة مراكش (المغرب)	sights	معالم سياحية
France	فرنسا	race	يتسابق
Paris	مدينة باريس (عاصمة فرنسا)	beach buggies	عربات شاطئية
Eiffel Tower	برج آيفل (باريس)	paintings	لوحات
the Louvre	متحف اللوفر (باريس)	diary	مفكرة يومية

Other words كلمات أخرى

museum	متحف	stall	كشك
formal language	اللغة الرسمية	sand dunes	كثبان رملية
local dishes	أكلات شعبية	metal	معدن
chef	طاه / طباخ	smell	رائحة
perhaps	ربما	snorkeling	الغطس
a bit	قليلاً	turtles	سلاحف
At the end of ...	في نهاية ...	still	مازال
shopping	التسوق	home	وطن / موطن
handicrafts	مصنوعات يدوية	wandering	التجول

Adjectives صفات

perfect	رائع	crowded / busy	مزدحم
hungry	جائع	private	خاص
special	مميز / خاص	brightly-colored	ذو ألوان زاهية
traditional	تقليدي	cultural	حضاري / ثقافي

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
try	يحاول	tried
wait	ينتظر	waited
visit	يزور	visited
remind	يُذَكِّر	reminded
include	يشتمل	included

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
understand	يفهم	understood
speak	يتكلم	spoke
keep up	يجارى	kept up

Study the following

1. We saw some famous sights from the boat.
   - رأينا بعض المعالم السياحية المشهورة من القارب.
2. The Eiffel Tower is really tall and made of metal.
   - برج آيفل طويل جدا ومصنوع من المعدن.
3. The Louvre is a beautiful museum with fantastic paintings.
   - اللوفر هو متحف جميل به لوحات رائعة.
4. The French people were very kind.
   - كان الفرنسيون طيبون جدا.
5. When I spoke English, they understood me!
   - عندما تحدثت باللغة الإنجليزية فهموني.
6. At the end of the day, we went to a French restaurant.
   - في نهاية اليوم ذهبنا إلى مطعم للأكلات الفرنسية.
7. There's so much to do.
   - يوجد أشياء كثيرة لتفعلها.
8. Today we went to Ali Ben Youssef Madrasa, a beautiful museum.
   - ذهبنا اليوم إلى مدرسة علي بن يوسف (متحف جميل).
9. I like it there because it reminds me a bit of Al-Azhar Park at home.
   - أحبها لأنها تذكرني قليلا بحديقة الأزهر في وطني (بلدي مصر).
10. The smells coming from the market stalls make me hungry!
    - الروائح الآتية من الأكشاك الموجودة بالسوق جعلتني جائع.

11 We go to the beach to go snorkeling. - نذهب للشاطيء لكي نمارس رياضة الغطس.

12 We race through the sand dunes in beach buggies!

- نتسابق عبر الكثبان الرملية بالعربات الشاطئية.

13 Can you keep up? - هل تستطيع أن تجاري (السباق)؟

14 Learn about the city's cultural past with a trip to the museum today.

- تعلم عن حضارة المدينة في الماضي من خلال رحلة إلى المتحف اليوم.

15 You can see the chef making the local dishes.

- يمكنك أن ترى الطاهي (الطباخ) يُعد الأكلات الشعبية.



Writing a diary

When you write a diary, you should...	عندما تكتب مفكرة يومية ينبغي أن
Write the date.	تكتب تاريخ اليوم.
Start with "Dear Diary".	تبدأ بـ: مذكراتي العزيزة.
Describe the places / events.	تصف الأماكن والأحداث.
Say how you felt.	تقول ما شعرت به.

1 Read the diary entries. Match the people to the places

اقرأ التدوينات اليومية (فى الصفحة القادمة). صل الناس بالأماكن:



❶ Marrakech, Morocco

....



❷ Eiffel Tower, Paris, France

....


استمع إلى النصوص:

Reem

July 21st

Dear Diary,

I had such a cool day today. I went on the river. We saw some famous sights(1) from the boat, like the Louvre(2), a beautiful museum with fantastic paintings(3), and the Eiffel Tower(4). The Eiffel Tower is really tall and made of metal(5). I tried to speak French(6), but I couldn't really say anything. But the French people were very kind and when I spoke English, they understood(7) me! At the end of the day we went to a French restaurant and had a wonderful meal with potatoes. It was a special day.

Arabic Meaning

١- معالم سياحية
٢- متحف اللوفر
٣- لوحات
٤- برج آيفل
٥- معدن
٦- اللغة الفرنسية
٧- فهم

Amira

April 5th

Dear Diary,

I love this city! There's so much to do. Today we went to Ali Ben Youssef Madrasa, a beautiful museum that is 800 years old! We went early in the morning, but it was still(1) very busy(2) with people. We also visited Jardin Majorelle(3), a lovely garden where we had a picnic. I like it there because it reminds(4) me a bit of Al-Azhar Park at home. But my favorite place is Jemaa el-Fnaa(5), the market(6) place. The smells(7) coming from the market stalls(8) make me hungry! I had a sandwich yesterday. I can't wait(9) to go back there tomorrow!

Arabic Meaning

١- مازال
٢- مزدحم
٣- حديقة ماجوريل بالمغرب
٤- يذكر
٥- جامع الفنا
٦- سوق
٧- روائح
٨- أكشاك
٩- ينتظر

Tip!

Write the date when you start a new diary entry.

اكتب التاريخ عندما تبدأ تدوينة يومية جديدة.

2 Read. Check (✓) the statements that apply

اقرأ. ضع (✓) أمام ما يتم تنفيذه من الجمل عند كتابة تدوينه يومية:

When writing a diary:

1- you should start with "Dear Diary". ☐

2- you should write about how you felt. ☐

3- you should use formal language. ☐

4- you need to remember that other people will read it. ☐

5- you should include personal pronouns like "I" and "me". ☐

3 Read and circle:

اقرأ وضع دائرة:

Read the two diary entries again. Who ...

اقرأ التدوينتين اليومية مرة أخرى. اختر «ريم» أو «أميرة».

1- went on a boat?	Reem	Amira
2- thought somewhere was very crowded?	Reem	Amira
3- went somewhere that was like a place at home?	Reem	Amira
4- saw something beautiful made of metal?	Reem	Amira
5- said that the smell of the food made them hungry?	Reem	Amira
6- ate something made of potatoes for dinner?	Reem	Amira

4 Think of a day when you did something special. Write a diary entry of about 30-40 words:

فكر في يوم عندما فعلت شيئًا مميزًا . اكتب تدوينه يومية من حوالى ٣٠ - ٤٠ كلمة:

Remember:

- Write the date.
- Start with "Dear Diary".
- Describe the places / events.
- Say how you felt.

Think!

We shouldn't read other people's diaries because they are private. However, do you think it's right to read the diaries of people from the past? Why? Why not?

يجب عليك ألا تقرأ يوميات الآخرين، لأن هذه اليوميات خاصة بهم ولكن هل من الصحيح أن تقرأ اليوميات الخاصة بالآخرين من الماضي في رأيك لماذا؟ لما لا؟

5 Read. Do you want to go on this vacation? Why? / Why not?

اقرأ. هل تريد أن تذهب فى أجازة؟لماذا؟ لما لا؟

My perfect vacation. (اجازتى المثالية)



استمع إلى النصوص:

Day 1

In the morning, we go to the beach to go snorkeling(1). Swim with the turtles(2) and brightly-colored(3) fish! The afternoon can be spent on the beach with a picnic(4) and a good book.



Arabic Meaning

١- يذهب للغطس
٢-سلاحف
٣- زاهي/ذات ألوان زاهية
٤- طعام للنزهة

Day 2

Today we race(5) through the sand dunes in beach buggies(6)! It's fun and fast! Can you keep up(7)?



Arabic Meaning

٥- يتسابق
٦- عربات شاطئية
٧- يواصل

Day 3

Spend a relaxed day shopping and wandering through(8) the markets. Perhaps(9) buy some traditional handicrafts(10) to take home.



Arabic Meaning

٨- التجول عبر
٩- ربما
١٠- مصنوعات يدوية

Day 4

Learn about the city's cultural(11) past with a trip(12) to the museum today. In the evening, we go to a traditional restaurant where you can see the chef making the local dishes(13).



Arabic Meaning

١١- ثقافي
١٢- رحلة قصيرة
١٣- أكلات شعبية



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Eiffel Tower is made of ____________.
   - a wood
   - b metal
   - c plastic
   - d glass
2. We go to the beach to go ____________.
   - a snorkeling
   - b shopping
   - c sleeping
   - d wandering
3. We will race today. Can you ____________ up? الشرقية - إدارة كفر صقر (2024)
   - a make
   - b walk
   - c keep
   - d swim
4. The smells coming from my mother's cooking make me ____________.
   - a private
   - b hungry
   - c kind
   - d busy
5. Many people ________ through the streets in Khan Al-Kalili. الإسماعيلية - إدارة الإسماعيلية (2023)
   - a jump
   - b wander
   - c run
   - d fly

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة

I'm Walid. I'm from Aswan I want to have a perfect vacation. My next trip is to Cairo. I love this city! I like going to Cairo by train. I want to go to the Cairo Tower. It is so tall and made of metal. I want to go to the Egyptian Museum. I will learn a lot about Egypt in the past. I also want to visit Al-Azhar Park. **It** has a lot of fantastic trees and flowers. It sounds interesting! I can't wait to go there soon!

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Cairo Tower is made of ____________.
   - a carton
   - b paper
   - c mud
   - d metal
2. The underlined word "**It**" refers to ____________.
   - a Cairo
   - b the Cairo Tower
   - c Egyptian Museum
   - d Al-Azhar Park

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What does Walid want to have? ______________________________
4. Where will Walid learn about Egypt in the past? ____________________
5. How does Walid go to Cairo? ______________________________

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

دمياط - إدارة كفر سعد (2024)

1. you - Can - up - keep?

- -

2. the - on - went - I - river

- -

3. some - saw - sights - famous - Magda.

- -

4. metal - Eiffel - The - made of - is - Tower.

- -

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

الجيزة - إدارة العمرانية (2023)

1. I .... (have) such a cool day yesterday.
2. Be careful! That snake is .... (poison).
3. Everyone knows Soha. She is very .... (fame).
4. Reem's birthday is .... (at) January 4th.
5. .... (At) Saturdays, I visit my grandma.

الغربية - إدارة سمنود (2024)

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

بني سويف - إدارة إهناسيا (2023)

1. do you want to go on vacation

- -

2. The french people were very kind

- -

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:



A race through the sand

Guiding phrases

sand dunes - beach buggies

- -

- -

Review

Key vocabulary



hotel
فندق



swimming pool
حمام سباحة



high-rise building
ناطحة سحاب



theme park
ملاهي



ticket
تذكرة



museum
متحف



airport
مطار



tourist
سائح



passport
جواز سفر

traditional	تقليدي
day trip	رحلة فى وقت النهار
diary	مفكرة يومية
go on vacation	يذهب في إجازة
a bit low	حزين قليلا
diary entry	تدوينة يومية
wander	يتجول
handicrafts	مصنوعات يدوية
stalls	أكشاك

bench	مقعد طويل
awesome	مذهل
sights	معالم سياحية
race	يتسابق
beach buggies	عربات شاطئية
paintings	لوحات
Morocco	دولة المغرب
Eiffel Tower	برج آيفل
the Louvre	متحف اللوفر (باريس)

Other words كلمات أخرى



luckily	لحسن الحظ
flight	رحلة جوية
vacation	إجازة / عطلة
footprints	آثار القدم
banks	ضفاف
leaflet	منشور
tour	جولة

chance	فرصة
destination	جهة الوصول
mud	وحل / طين
exploring	استكشاف
trading center	مركز تجاري
citadel	قلعة
suddenly	فجأة

Help your child revise unit 11 . ساعد طفلك يراجع الوحدة الحادية عشر.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
relax	يستريح	relaxed
arrive	يصل	arrived
check in	يسجل وصول	checked in
head out	يتوجه إلى	headed out
float	يطفو	floated
walk around	يتجول حول	walked around
discover	يكتشف	discovered

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
spend	يقضي (وقت)	spent
fly	يطير / يسافر جوا	flew
take photos	يلتقط صور	took photos
drive	يقود (سيارة)	drove
leave	يغادر	left

Grammar قواعد لغوية

Prepositions of time حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت

1 on

◉ نستخدم حرف الجر **on** قبل أيام الأسبوع والمناسبات الخاصة والتواريخ المحددة:
- I don't go to a school **on** Fridays.
- I am having a party **on** my birthday.
- I was born **on** July 6th, 2010.

2 at

◉ نستخدم حرف الجر **at** قبل الوقت وبعض العبارات:
- The train to Aswan leaves **at** 8 pm. / **at** lunchtime / night / midnight

3 in

◉ نستخدم حرف الجر **in** قبل الشهور وفصول السنة والسنوات وأيضا أوقات اليوم:
- My birthday is **in** June.
- I was born **in** 2010.
- **in** the afternoon / evening

◉ لاحظ إذا جاء رقم بعد الشهر نستخدم **on** لأن هنا نقصد اليوم:
- My birthday is **on** October 11th.

Pronunciation

◉ لاحظ الفرق بين الأصوات /θ/ و /ð/:

The sounds /θ/		The sounds /ð/	
thing	شيء	these	هؤلاء
Thursday	يوم الخميس	those	أولئك
think	يعتقد	this	هذا
three	ثلاثة	with	مع
Earth	الأرض	mother	أم
author	مؤلف		



Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

Lesson 1

My trip to Singapore

1 I traveled to Singapore with my parents on holiday. My father was on a business trip. We stayed in a lovely hotel. There are lots of high-rise buildings and many parks and gardens to sit under and relax.

Lesson 2

What you do at different times

2 On Thursdays, I can do my things at different times. I go swimming at seven am. I go to the park at twelve am. Then, I go to the museum at two o'clock. I enjoy my day.

Lesson 3

Your visit to Al-Azhar Park

3 I live in Cairo. On the summer holiday, I visit Al-Azhar Park. We make a picnic with my friends. We sit under a big tree on the cool green grass and enjoy our food. We play football, too. It's a fantastic place.

Lessons 4&5

A race through the sand

4 I like racing through the sand dunes in beach buggies. It's fun and fast. I go with my friends. It's exciting and safe. I go there every week. I enjoy my time there. This is my perfect vacation.

Test - Unit 11

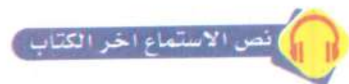
Things to do on vacation

5 On vacations, I learn new things. My father took us to the Egyptian Museum. We saw fantastic statues there. The statues are made of gold or rocks. We knew many things and enjoyed a lot. I want to go there again.

Al-Azhar Test

اختبار خاص بالأزهر الشريف

A- Listening



1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I went to the theme park with my .... (father - friend - cousin)
2. We went on different .... (rides - bikes - boats)
3. We took lot of photos with my .... (camera - phone - tablet)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ و أكمل المحادثة:

snorkeling - sandcastles - would - beach

A: Where ❶ .... you like to go?

B: I want to go to the ❷ ....

A: Do you want to go ❸ .... ?

B: Yes. I want to make ❹ ...., too.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the questions: أقرا و اجب عن الأسئلة:

Hamza visited the zoo last weekend. He went with his family by bus. He saw a lot of animals there. He fed the elephant and the giraffe. He took photos with them. He liked his vacation.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. Where did Hamza go last weekend?

....

2. How did Hamza go to the zoo?

....

B - Choose the correct answer:

3. Hamza fed the --------- and the giraffe. (lion - elephant - deer)

4. Hamza took ----- with the elephant and the giraffe. (carrots - lakes - photos)

5. Hamza liked his ------------. (football - vacation - school)

D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. My birthday is ------------- Monday.

   a in b at c on

2. I put my clothes in a ---------.

   a museum b suitcase c picnic

3. This watch is very ----------.

   a active b expensive c creative

4. My family wanted to go on ----------.

   a suitcase b vacation c passport

5. I get up ------- 7 am.

   a in b on c at

5 Read and reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اقرأ و اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملا صحيحة:

1. was - **How** - flight - your?

   ----

2. suitcase - **She's** - her - packing.

   ----

3. perfect - **This** - my - vacation.

   ----

4. fly - **When** - they - from - did - Cairo?

   ----

5. go - swimming - at - **I** - o'clock - seven.



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Ramy and Adam are ....
   a brothers   b cousins   c students   d friends
2. Ramy and Adam are in primary ....
   a 5   b 4   c 6   d 3
3. Ramy likes playing football after school on ....
   a Monday   b Thursday   c Saturday   d Wednesday
4. Adam goes .... on Friday.
   a cycling   b swimming   c shopping   d sleeping

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

سوهاج - إدارة طهطا (2024)

1. Mom sat on a .... in Al-Azhar Park.
   a bench   b beach   c ticket   d flight
2. We .... through the sand dunes in beach buggies.
   a race   b relax   c find   d put
3. You can have fun and go on different rides at the ....
   a sand dunes   b theme park   c museum   d airport

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

checked - warm - degrees - traditional

Last year, we visited Amman. We went there by plane. The plane landed at 4 pm. It was about 26 (1) .... and I was surprised that it was (2) .... in October. We went to our hotel and (3) .... in. It was a comfortable hotel.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة

My name is Reda. I want to spend my next weekend in the Orman Garden. It is one of the most famous botanical gardens in Egypt. It is located in Giza. The garden has a lot of beautiful trees and flowers. It has a spring festival every year. The Spring Festival usually starts in March and it is an important Egyptian cultural event in spring. The festival usually lasts for a month. It will be a good vacation.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:

1. The Spring Festival usually starts in ....
   a July b March c May d June
2. Reda will have a .... vacation.
   a bad b useless c boring d good

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What does Reda want? ....
4. Where is the Orman Garden located? ....
5. What does the Orman Garden have? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. does - When - land - flight - our? ....
2. snorkeling - We - going - the weekend - on - are. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I was born .... (in) August 15th.
2. Amman is a really busy............ (on) night.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. did you visit Al-Azhar Park at night ....
2. we have to pack our suitcases .... قنا - إدارة الوقف (2024)

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Things to do on vacation

Guiding phrases

Egyptian museum - fantastic statues

....

....

Fiction Reader

A Fantastic Family Adventure

مغامرة عائلية رائعة



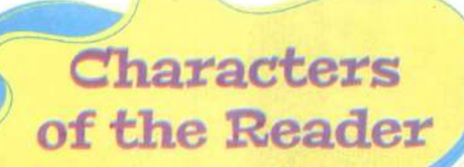
Objectives of the Unit

أهداف الوحدة

1. To read and understand a story. ١ - يقرأ الطالب ويفهم قصة.
2. To enjoy reading in English. ٢ - يستمتع الطالب بالقراءة باللغة الإنجليزية.
3. To identify characters in a story. ٣ - يتعرف الطالب على شخصيات قصة.
4. To identify the key events and vocabulary in a story. ٤ - يتعرف الطالب على الأحداث الرئيسية والمفردات في قصة.
5. To review the story and check understanding. ٥ - يراجع الطالب القصة ويتأكد من فهمه لها.
6. To put events from a story in order. ٦ - يرتب أحداث من القصة بشكل صحيح.
7. To examine the characters in a story. ٧ - يختبر الطالب في شخصيات القصة.
8. To retell the story. ٨ - يعيد الطالب رواية القصة.

Lesson 1 Vocabulary





شخصيات القصة



Dad
الأب



Mom
الأم



Ramy
رامى



Malak
ملك



Grandpa
الجد



Grandma
الجدة



Uncle Youssef
العم يوسف



Picture Dictionary
قاموس الصور


استمع إلى المفردات والنصوص:



dinosaur الديناصور

Dinosaurs were very big animals which lived millions of years ago.

كانت الديناصورات حيوانات ضخمة عاشت منذ ملايين السنين.



bones العظام

Our body has many bones to help us stand up.

جسمنا به عظاماً عديدة لتساعدنا على الوقوف.



skeleton هيكل عظمى

Fish and other animals have a skeleton made of bones inside their bodies.

تمتلك الأسماك والحيوانات الأخرى هيكل عظمي داخل أجسادهما.



tracks آثار أقدام

Animals' feet leave tracks on the ground where they walked.

تترك أقدام الحيوانات آثارًا علي الأرض التي ساروا عليها.



binoculars المنظار
نظارة مكبرة / معظمة

She likes looking at things in the distance with her binoculars.

تحب النظر إلى الأشياء البعيدة بالمنظار الخاص بها.



ibex الوعل

An ibex is a type of desert animal like a gazelle.

الوعل هو حيوان صحراوى مثل الغزال.



archaeologist عالم آثار

An archaeologist is someone who digs underground to find objects from many years ago and studies them.

عالم الآثار هو الشخص الذي يحفر تحت الأرض للعثور علي أشياء من سنوات عديدة ويدرسها.



archaeological dig حفر أثرى

An archaeological dig is when people work together to find something under the ground.

ينشيء الحفر الأثري عندما يعمل الناس معًا للعثور على شيء ما تحت الأرض.




استمع الى نص القصة

1



Ramy and Malak are playing in the yard[1]. Suddenly Dad calls them from the house.

"Hey kids, come and see this story in the newspaper[2]!"

The children run inside to see. Dad says, "Look. They found something amazing[3] near Grandma and Grandpa's village."

يلعب رامي وملك في الفناء. فجأة ينادى عليهم والدهم من المنزل.

"يا أولاد ، تعالوا وشاهدوا هذه القصة في الجريدة!"

يركض الأولاد إلى الداخل ليروا. يقول والدهم "انظروا. لقد وجدوا شيئًا رائعًا بالقرب من قرية جدكم وجدتكم."

"What is it. Dad?" asks Ramy."It looks scary[4]!"

Dad says, "No Ramy, it's not scary at all. It's the skeleton[5] of a dinosaur[6]. A group of archaeologists[7] found it. And your uncle Youssef is one of those archaeologists!"

يسأل رامي "ما هذا يا أبي؟ إنه يبدو مخيفًا!"

يقول الأب "لا يا رامي، إنه ليس مخيفًا على الإطلاق. إنه هيكل عظمي لديناصور. عثر عليه مجموعة من علماء الآثار. وعمك يوسف واحداً من هؤلاء."

1- yard	فناء	2- newspaper	جريدة	3- amazing	مذهل	4- scary	مخيف
5- skeleton	هيكل عظمي	6- dinosaur	ديناصور	7- archaeologists	علماء آثار		

2



That's awesome[1], Dad!" says Malak. "The dinosaur skeleton is really old, isn't it?"

"Yes, that's right, Malak "says Dad. "It's about 98 million years old!"

"Wow! Uncle Youssef has got a really interesting[2] job, hasn't he?" says Ramy.

"Yes, he has. And his work is important[3] too. It helps us learn about the past." says Dad.

تقول ملك "هذا رائع يا أبي! الهيكل العظمي للديناصور قديم حقًا، أليس كذلك؟"

يقول الأب "نعم، هذا صحيح يا ملك. يصل عمره إلى حوالي ٩٨ مليون عام!"

يقول رامي "رائع! يعمل العم يوسف فى وظيفة ممتعة حقًا، أليس كذلك؟"

يقول الأب "نعم، هو كذلك. وعمله مهم أيضًا. إنه يساعدنا في التعرف على الماضي."

1- awesome رائع	2- interesting شيق	3- important مهم

3



Later that evening Ramy and his family are having dinner.

Dad says, "Do you want to go there the next time we go to Grandma's house?"

في وقت لاحق من ذلك المساء يتناول رامي وعائلته العشاء.

يقول الأب "هل تريد الذهاب إلى هناك عندما نذهب إلى منزل جدتك في المرة القادمة ؟"

Ramy says, "That's a great idea, Dad. It would be an adventure(1) to go into the desert!"

Mom says, "There's a beautiful nature trail(2) there. Why don't we walk that together?"

"Oh yes please, Mom! I love nature." says Malak.

يقول رامي "هذه فكرة رائعة يا أبي. الذهاب إلى الصحراء سيكون مغامرة!"

تقول الأم "يوجد ممشى (درب) طبيعي جميل هناك. لماذا لا نسير فيه معًا؟"

تقول ملك " نعم من فضلك يا أمي! أحب الطبيعة."

1- adventure	مغامرة	2- nature trail	ممشى (درب) طبيعي





"Ramy! Malak!" Grandma calls. She is so excited[1] to see her grandchildren[2].

"I have prepared your favorite things - feteer[3] and mint tea![4] Come inside and eat."

تنادى الجدة "رامي! ملك!" إنها متحمسة للغاية لرؤية أحفادها.

"أعددت أشيائكم المفضلة - فطير وشاي بالنعناع! تعالوا إلى الداخل وتناولوا الطعام."

"Hello," says Grandpa to Mom and Dad. "It's so good to see you."

"It's lovely to be here," says Dad. "Tomorrow we want to take the children on a nature trail."

يقول الجد لأمي وأبي "مرحبًا، إنه من الجيد رؤيتكم."

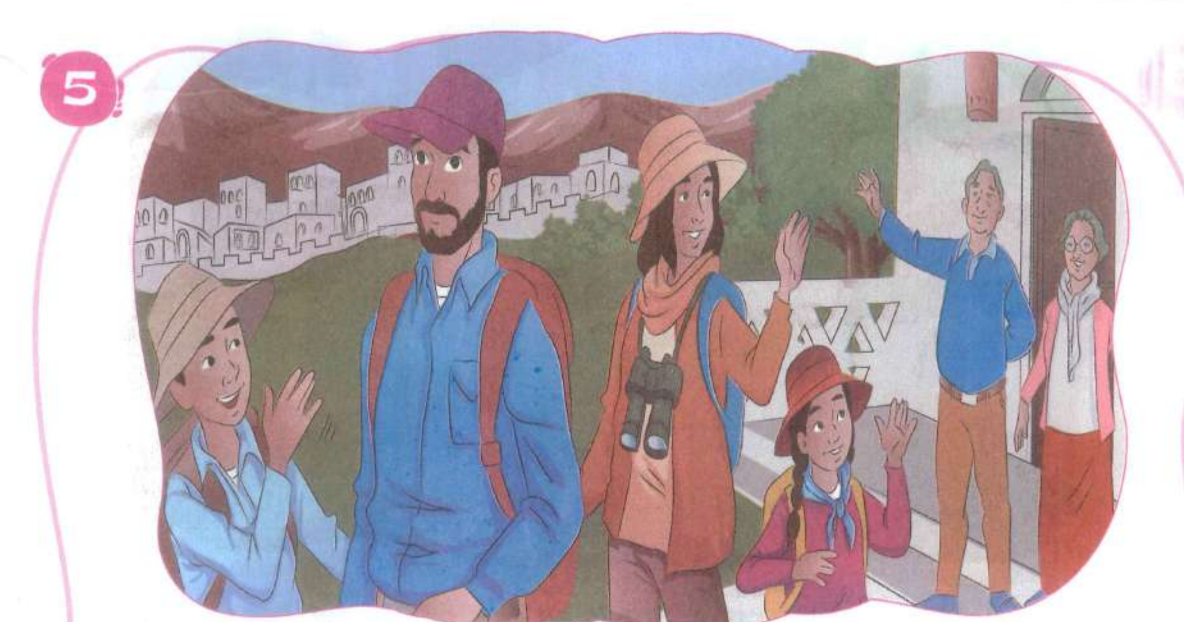
يقول أبي "من الرائع أن نكون هنا. نريد غدًا أن نأخذ الأولاد إلى الممشى (الدرب) الطبيعي."

"Excellent," says Grandpa. "There's lots to see in our area. It's a beautiful place."

يقول الجد "ممتاز. هناك الكثير لتروه في منطقتنا. إنه مكان جميل."

1- excited	متحمس/مسرور	2- grandchildren	أحفاد	3- feteer	فطير	4- mint tea	شاي بالنعناع

5



The next morning everyone is happy. They are ready to walk the nature trail. They are wearing hats, scarves, and sunglasses.

في صباح اليوم التالي الجميع سعداء. إنهم مستعدون للسير في الممشى (الدرب) الطبيعي. إنهم يرتدون القبعات والأوشحة ونظارات الشمس.

They have snacks and water in their **backpacks**(1). Mom has some **binoculars**(2) too. She wants to look at the amazing birds that live here. They are in a beautiful part of Egypt with many types of **rare**(3) animals.

لديهم وجبات خفيفة وماء في حقائب الظهر الخاصة بهم. أمي لديها منظار (نظارة مكبرة) أيضًا. إنها تريد أن تنظر إلى الطيور الرائعة التي تعيش هنا. إنهم في جزء جميل من مصر حيث يحتوي علي العديد من أنواع الحيوانات النادرة.

1- backpacks	حقائب ظهر	2- binoculars	منظار (نظارة مكبرة)	3- rare	نادر





It's a lovely warm day, not too hot. It's a **perfect**[1] day for walking. There are **cactus**[2] plants and palm trees and they see sheep and some camels.

إنه يوم جميل ودافئ. ليس شديد الحرارة. إنه يوم مثالي للمشي. يوجد نباتات الصبار والنخيل وهم يشاهدون الخراف وبعض الجمال.

Malak is very pleased because she loves animals. "Please walk quietly and carefully everyone." she says."If we are quiet, we could see a **fennec fox**[3], or a **dorcas gazelle**[4], or maybe a sand cat."

تشعر ملك بسعادة بالغة لأنها تحب الحيوانات. تقول "أرجو من الجميع المشي بهدوء وبعناية. عندما نكون هادئين، يمكننا مشاهدة ثعلب الفنك أو غزال دوركاس أو ربما قطة الرمال."

The family continue along the trail. Ramy sees animals' **tracks**[5] in the sand.

Dad takes a photo of a fennec fox. Mom sees many beautiful birds. Everyone is enjoying the trail.

تواصل العائلة السير على طول الممشى. يشاهد رامي آثار أقدام الحيوانات في الرمال. يلتقط أبي صوراً لثعلب الفنك. تشاهد أمي العديد من الطيور الجميلة. الجميع يستمتع بالممشى.

1- perfect	مثالي	2- cactus	نبات الصبار	3- fennec fox	ثعلب الفنك
4- dorcas gazelle	غزال دوركاس	5- tracks	آثار أقدام		

7



Then Mom says."Hey everyone. I have something in my shoe. Can we stop for a minute?"

She sits down. The others drink some water and wait. Ramy looks down at the rocks near the path. He sees some strange shapes inside them.

ثم تقول الأم: "مرحبًا بالجميع. لدي شيء في حذائي. هل يمكننا التوقف لدقيقة؟"

تجلس الأم. يشرب الآخرون بعض الماء وينتظرون. ينظر رامي للأسفل إلى الصخور بالقرب من الطريق. يرى بعض الأشكال الغريبة بداخلها.

"Look!" he says."What are these things in the rocks, Dad?"

"I don't know," says Dad."They look like bones[1] ..."

"We are very near the place they found the dinosaur skeleton," says Mom. "Maybe they are dinosaur bones!"

" يقول رامي"أنظر! ما هذه الأشياء في الصخور يا أبي؟

يقول الأب "لا أعرف. تبدو مثل العظام."

تقول الأم "نحن قريبون جدًا من المكان الذي وجدوا فيه الهيكل العظمي للديناصور. ربما تكون عظام ديناصور."

Ramy is very excited."Let's ask Uncle Youssef!" he says."Dad, can we call him?"

"Yes, of course." says Dad.

Uncle Youssef is very interested in[2] the rocks Ramy found. He tells Dad to take some photographs[3] of them and meet him at Grandma's house for dinner.

رامي متحمس جدًا ويقول "لنسأل العم يوسف! هل يمكن أن نتصل به يا أبي؟"

يقول الأب "نعم بالطبع."

العم يوسف مهتم جدًا بالصخور التي وجدها رامي. يخبر أبي أن يلتقط بعض الصور لهم وأن يلتقي به في منزل جدتي على العشاء.

1- bones	عظام	2- interested in	مهتم بـ	3- photographs	صور فوتوغرافية

8



Later that evening Dad shows Uncle Youssef the photos and Ramy shows him the place on the map. Uncle Youssef asks the family to go back there with him the next day.

في وقت لاحق من ذلك المساء ، يعرض أبي الصور على العم يوسف ويوضح له رامي المكان على الخريطة. يطلب العم يوسف من العائلة العودة معه هناك في اليوم التالي.

9



The next day they go back along the trail. They find Ramy's rocks and Uncle Youssef looks at them carefully.

في اليوم التالي يعودون على امتداد الممشى. يعثروا على صخور رامي و ينظر عمه يوسف اليهم بعناية.

"They are not dinosaur bones in the rocks," says Uncle Youssef. "But they are certainly[1] very old. They are probably from a type of ancient ibex that doesn't exist[2] now."

يقول العم يوسف "لا يوجد عظام ديناصور في الصخور. لكنها بالتأكيد قديمة جدًا. ربما هي عظام لنوع قديم من من أنواع الوعل والغير موجود الآن."

Ramy is disappointed[3] because the bones are not from a dinosaur. But Uncle Youssef says, "Well done Ramy for finding them! It is important to take time to look at the world around us and watch things - just like an archaeologist! Now, would you all like to come to the dig and see my dinosaur skeleton?" "Yes please, Uncle Youssef!" say Ramy and Malak.

يصاب رامي بخيبة أمل لأن العظام ليست عظام ديناصور. لكن العم يوسف يقول "أحسنت يا رامي في العثور عليها! من المهم أن تخصص بعض من وقتك في النظر إلى العالم من حولك ومشاهدة الأشياء - تمامًا مثل عالم الآثار! الآن، هل ترغبون جميعًا في القدوم إلى عملية التنقيب ورؤية الهيكل العظمي للديناصور الذى وجدته؟"
يقول رامي وملك "نعم من فضلك يا عمي يوسف!"

1- certainly	بالتأكيد	2- doesn't exist	غير موجود	3- disappointed	محبط

10



"Here it is," says Uncle Youssef. "What do you think?"
"Wow!" says Ramy."It's amazing to think it lived millions of years ago."
"And that its bones were under the ground for such a long time." says Malak.

"In fact, we found the skeleton because of climate change[1]." says Uncle Youssef.

يقول العم يوسف "ها هو، ما رأيكم؟"
يقول رامي "رائع! إنه لأمر مدهش أن تتخيل أنه عاش منذ ملايين السنين."
تقول ملك "وأن عظامه كانت تحت الأرض لمثل هذه الفترة الطويلة."
يقول العم يوسف "في الواقع ، وجدنا الهيكل العظمي بسبب تغير المناخ."

"Now there is less rain and fewer plants. This means the ground is dry[2] and the wind can blow[3] away the sand. Things that were under the ground come to the surface[4]. That's good for archaeologists but bad for the planet[5]."

"الآن هناك أمطار أقل ونباتات أقل. وهذا يعني أن الأرض جافة ويمكن للرياح أن تعصف بالرمال." الأشياء التي كانت تحت الأرض تظهر على السطح. هذا جيد لعلماء الآثار ولكنه سيء للكوكب."

1- climate change	تغير المناخ	2- dry	جاف	3- blow	تعصف / تهب (للرياح)
4- surface	سطح	5- planet	كوكب		

11



"Later everyone is getting ready to go home.

"Thanks for showing us the dinosaur, Uncle Youssef." says Ramy" "It was so interesting. I would love to be an archaeologist. It's such a cool job!."

في وقت لاحق يستعد الجميع للعودة إلى المنزل.

يقول رامي "شكرًا للسماح برؤية الديناصور يا عم يوسف. لقد كان شيقاً للغاية. أريد أن أصبح عالم آثار. يا له من عمل رائع!"

"It's **fascinating**[1] work, but it's **hard**[2]," says Uncle Youssef. "Sometimes we look for years and don't find anything."

"We can help if you're looking for other dinosaurs!" says Malak.

يقول العم يوسف "إنه عمل رائع، لكنه شاق". "في بعض الأحيان نبحث لسنوات ولا نجد شيئاً." تقول ملك "يمكننا المساعدة إذا كنت تبحث عن ديناصورات أخرى!"

"Thanks for all the **delicious**[3] food." says Mom." It was lovely to see you both again."

"Thank you dear. Come back and see us soon." says Grandma.

تقول الأم "شكرًا على كل الطعام اللذيذ. كان من الرائع أن أراكما مرة أخرى."

تقول الجدة "شكرًا لك عزيزتي. تعالى لزيارتنا قريبًا."

1- fascinating رائع	2- hard شاق	3- delicious لذيذ

12



"So, did you enjoy our trip?" asks Mom in the car.

"Yes, I thought it was fantastic." says Ramy. "Me too!" says Malak.

تسأل الأم في السيارة "إذن، هل استمتعتما برحلتنا؟"

يقول رامي " نعم، اعتقد أنها كانت رائعة. " تقول ملك "وأنا أيضًا! "

"What do you think you learned from it?" asks Dad.

Ramy says, "I learned it's important to look around us carefully and notice things in our environment(1)."

"Yes, that is how you can discover (2) interesting things." adds Malak.

"You're right, kids" says Dad."Well done!"

يسأل الأب "ماذا تعلمتما منها في رأيكما؟"

يقول رامي "تعلمت أنه من المهم أن ننظر حولنا بعناية وأن نلاحظ الأشياء في بيئتنا. "

تضيف ملك "نعم، هذه هي الطريقة التي يمكنك من خلالها اكتشاف أشياء مثيرة للاهتمام. "

يقول الأب "أنتم على حق يا أولاد،أحسنتم!"

1- environment	البيئة	2- discover	نكتشف

Lesson 2 Characters Vocabulary

1 Label the people with the names in the box:

اكتب أسماء الشخصيات من القائمة تحت الصور:

Mom - Ramy - Grandma - Grandpa - Dad - Malak - Uncle Youssef

1 

Uncle Youssef

2 

----

3 

----

4 

----

5 

----

6 

----

7 

----

2 Read. Decide if the sentences are True (T) or False (F). Correct the false sentences in your notebook

إقرأ. قرر إذا كانت الجمل صحيحة أم خطأ. صحح الجمل الخطأ:

1. Mom sees the story about the dinosaur skeleton in the newspaper. (F)

Dad sees the story about the dinosaur skeleton in the newspaper.

2. The dinosaur skeleton is near their house. ( )

3. Uncle Youssef is a farmer. ( )

4. Mom loves looking at birds. ( )

5. Ramy finds dinosaur bones. ( )

6. They go to Uncle Youssef's office. ( )

3 Complete the puzzle with words from the story. What's the word in yellow?

أكمل اللغز بكلمات من القصة. ما هى الكلمة باللون الأصفر؟

1 2 3 4

12 mint................

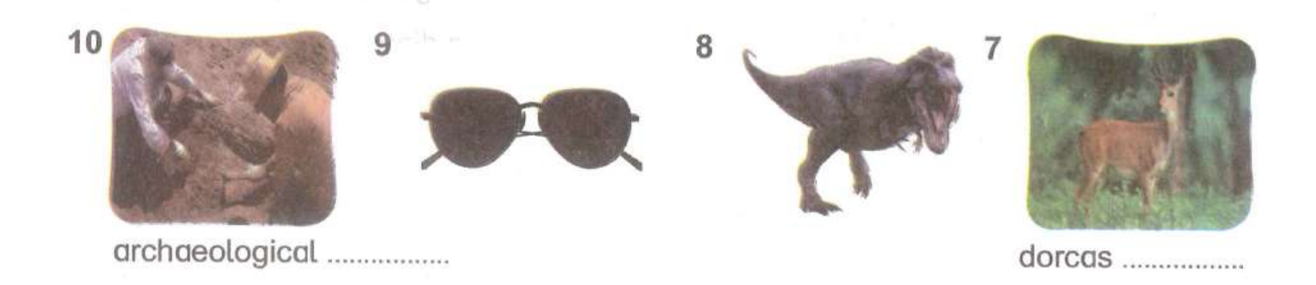
1
2
3
4
a
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12

5

6 fennec ....

11

10 9 8 7



archaeological ....

dorcas ....

Lesson 3 Events in the story

1 Look and number in order: أنظر ورقم بالترتيب:

a [ ]

b [ ]

c [ ]

d [1]

e [ ]

f [ ]

2 Read and match to make sentences: إقرأ وصل لتكوين جمل:

A	B
1 Dad reads a story	a. live near the archaeological dig.
2 The children's grandparents	b. the family to the dig.
3 Ramy finds old bones	c. about a dinosaur in the newspaper.
4 Uncle Youssef invites	d. an archaeologist in the future.
5 Ramy wants to be	e. in some rocks near the trail.

3 Work with a partner. Retell the story by looking at the pictures in Exercise 1 and using your answers to Exercise 2. What is your favorite scene? Why?

اعمل مع زميلك. أعد سرد القصة بالنظر إلى الصور فى التمرين ١ واستخدام الإجابات فى التمرين ٢. ما هو مشهدك المفضل؟ لماذا؟:

4 Read and complete the story summary with the words in the box:

إقرأ وأكمل ملخص القصة بالكلمات فى القائمة :

ibex - rocks - next - trail - invites - dig - fun - Dad - skeleton - Grandma

At home, ...Dad.... reads a newspaper story about a dinosaur (2) .... He's very excited because Uncle Youssef is working on the archaeological (3) .... At dinnertime, he suggests to the family that they visit (4) ...., who lives near the dig. The family loves the idea and they travel to see them the (5) .... day. Grandma and Grandpa are very happy to see them. The family go on a nature (6) .... and see lots of beautiful animals and birds. Ramy sees some bones in the (7) .... and he thinks they are dinosaur bones. Uncle Youssef checks the rocks and says they are not dinosaur bones, but probably from an (8) .... He says it is a very good thing that Ramy is taking time to notice things on the trail. He also (9) .... them to go to his archaeological dig, which they think is a lot of (10) ....

5 Work with a partner. Discuss the questions:

إعمل مع زميلك. ناقش الأسئلة :

1. Why is it important to look carefully at the world around you?

2. What information can archaeology give us?

3. Why is archaeology an important activity in Egypt?

4. Why are dinosaur skeletons interesting? What can they tell us?

Review 4



Objectives of Review 4

أهداف المراجعة

Lesson 1: Listening and speaking

- To revise the vocabulary and language from Units 10 - 12.

- يراجع الطالب المفردات والقواعد اللغوية الموجودة بالوحدات من ١٠ إلى ١٢.

Lesson 2: Phonics and Assessment

- To revise the key letter sounds from Units 10 - 12.

- يراجع الطالب الصوتيات من الوحدات ١٠ إلى ١٢.

- To evaluate progress in Units 10 - 12.

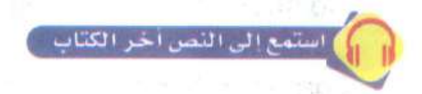
- يتم تقييم مدى نجاح الطالب فى استيعاب الوحدات من ١٠ الى ١٢.

- To read postcards and answer questions.

- يقرأ الطالب بطاقات بريدية ويجيب عن أسئلة.

Lesson 1 ★ Units 10 , 11 & 12

1 Write the missing letters. Listen and check: أكتب الحروف الناقصة. استمع و تأكد:



1- di – osa – r	2- pas – p – – t	3- ske – – to –
4- t – ac – s	5- bin – cu – ars	6- s – – tcase
7- ar – hae – – ogist	8- st – t – – n	

2 Complete the conversation with the sentences in the box:

أكمل المحادثة باستخدام الجمل:

Wear your jacket, please.
Don't forget to bring your swimming shorts.
Go straight to the end of the road

Conversation 1

Rania: Excuse me, where's the shopping mall, please?

Rabab: ------------------------------------, and then turn left.

Conversation 2

Basel: It's really cold outside.

Dad: You're right. ------------------------------------.

Conversation 3

Sherif: I can't wait for tomorrow's trip to the beach!

Hazem: ------------------------------------. We'll have a great time!

3 Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A lot of wonderful **paintings / factories** are in the museums.

----

2. Tourists like to see the amazing **monuments / beaches** in Luxor.

----

3. We will take a **relaxing / fixing** boat trip on the River Nile.

----

4. I like the **bad / delicious** food my mother usually cooks.

----

4 Read and match:

إقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 I will send you another email	a. inside the school library.
2 My brother usually	b. through the streets of Khan Al-Khalili.
3 Tourists like to wander	c. when I arrive in London.
4 Don't make noise	d. does his homework carefully.

Lesson 2 Units 10 , 11 & 12

1 Listen and complete with the correct sound:

استمع وأكمل بالصوت الصحيح:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. ba – – room
2. enj – –
3. wr – t –
4. gr – –
5. pl – –
6. mo – – er

2 Read. Match the places (1–3) to the postcards (a–c):

اقرأ. وصل الاماكن (١-٣) بالبطاقات البريدية (a - c):

1. a busy city ☐ **2. a desert** ☐ **3. a village** ☐

a. Hi Magdy,
I'm having a lovely time here. It's peaceful and very quiet, especially at night. There are a few shops and houses. There is only one restaurant, but it's great! Everyone who lives here is really friendly.
Bye!
Ali

b. Hello Rabab,
How are you? I'm having a real adventure here. We arrived on the weekend and set up our tent. It's quite difficult to sleep in a tent on sand! At night, we sit around a fire. (It gets really cold here at night). xq sing songs and eat delicious food, which we cook on the fire. You can see a million stars! It's beautiful.
See you next week,
Sahar

c. Hi Ghada,
We arrived on Monday, and we haven't stopped! There is so much to see here. We visited some museums and the theater, and we had an amazing tour of famous places. It's really fun, but very busy and crowded.
See you soon,
Randa

3 Circle the correct words:

ضع دائرة على الكلمات الصحيحة:

1. We flew to Alexandria **at / in / on** Monday.
2. Our flight leaves **at / in /on** 8 am.
3. Many people leave the city **at / in / on** the summer.
4. We are going to the park **at / in / on** the afternoon.
5. Her cousins usually visit her **at / in / on** July.

4 Check (√) the sentences are correct. Rewrite the sentences that are incorrect:

ضع (√) على الجمل الصحيحة. واعد كتابة الجمل الغير صحيحة:

1. I went to ride the train from Cairo Airport. ☒
   I went to ride the plane from Cairo Airport.
2. Shahinaz needed a big suitcase to put all her clothes in for the next trip. ☐
3. The hotel we stayed in had large, sunny rooms. ☐
4. I couldn't see the birds in the sky well, so I used my tickets. ☐
5. The library had lots of dinosaur skeletons and bones for us to see. ☐

5 Imagine you are on holiday in one of the places 1-3 in Exercise 2. Write a postcard of 30 words to a friend. Think about:

تخيل أنك فى إجازة فى أحد الأماكن فى التمرين ٢ . أكتب بطاقة بريدية من ٣٠ كلمة لصديق:

☐ where you are ------------------

☐ how you traveled ------------------

☐ who you are there with ------------------

☐ what you did yesterday ------------------

☐ why you like the place ------------------



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. I went to .... in summer.
   a Luxor   b Alexandria   c Cairo   d Aswan
2. I stayed in a ....
   a house   b park   c hotel   d street
3. I saw a lot of .... in the hotel.
   a friends   b tourists   c students   d players
4. I wore my swimming suit and ....
   a shoes   b sunglasses   c umbrellas   d shirts

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. There are a lot of .... in the museum.
   a factories   b beaches   c paintings   d stations
2. We use .... to look at things in the distance. المنوفية - إدارة أشمون (2024)
   a tracks   b bones   c binoculars   d skeleton
3. Don't make .... inside the school library.
   a cakes   b noise   c trip   d painting

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

cold - tent - fire - stars

I'm Hazem. I go to the desert every year. I usually set up our ❶ .... It's quite difficult to sleep in a tent on sand. At night, we sit around a ❷ .... It gets really ❸ .... here at night.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة

Libraries are important places. We go to the library to read and learn a lot of useful information. There are many rules to follow in the library. We shouldn't eat or drink in the library. We should keep **it** clean and put the books we use on the shelves. We should be quiet, too. If we need any help, we can ask the librarian to help us.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**it**" refers to the ....

   a information b library c book d librarian

2. We should be .... in the library.

   a noisy b amazed c quiet d bored

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why do we go to the library? ....
4. Who should you ask for help in the library? ....
5. Where should we put the books in the library? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. raced - sand - We - dunes - through. .... أسيوط - إدارة الفتح (2024)
2. sees - tracks - Ramy - in - animals' - the sand. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. .... (Keeps) quiet in the library.
2. We're flying to Morocco .... (in) January 25th. بني سويف - إدارة بني سويف (2023)

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. will your next class start at 10 pm ....
2. it s a perfect day for walking. ....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Al-Azhar Park

Guiding phrases

is in Cairo - fantastic place

....

....

Student's Book Listening Material



نصوص الاستماع الواردة فى كتاب الطالب



Unit 7



LESSON 3

Narrator: Listen and write the words you hear, page 36.

1- wood 2- flood 3- book

4- cook 5- tool 6- blood





Unit 9



LESSON 3

Narrator: Listen again and write the -er words, page 108.

1- teacher 2- reader 3- climber

4- footballer 5- farmer 6- traveler

Narrator: Listen and circle the word you hear. Then listen again and check, page 110

1- west 2- whale 3- vase

4- vet 5- volcano 6- winter

Narrator: Listen and write the words, page 111

1- wheel 2- vest 3- volcano

4- west 5- whale 6- vet

7- watermelon 8- wet 9- violin

Narrator: Listen and write. Then listen again and check, page 111

Last Wednesday I decided to travel west in my boat wearing my vest. I was looking for a volcano but I had some problems. I met some whales and they turned over my boat. I had to sit on my violin to stay afloat! I ate watermelon to stay healthy and I came to shore. I didn't find the volcano, but I met some vets and they took me home to my village!

Review 3



LESSON 2

Narrator : Put the dialog in the correct order. Listen, check, and repeat. Then act it out in pairs, page 129

Nurse : Come in, Kareem. What's the matter?

Kareem : I have an earache.

Nurse : Oh dear. Did you hit your ear with a ball?

Kareem : No, I had an earache when I woke up this morning.

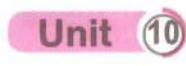
Nurse : Let me see. Yes, it is red inside. I think you should go home. I'll telephone your mom.

Kareem : Thank you, nurse.

Narrator: Listen then write the words you hear. Then match the words and pictures, page 130

1- panda 2- penguin 3- dolphin

4- rabbit 5- snail 6- whale



Unit 10



LESSON 1

Narrator : Listen, and match the places and people page 138

Narrator : 1 Sara

Sara : I'm going to visit my aunt and uncle. We're going by train.

Narrator : 2 Ahmed

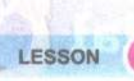
Ahmed : My cousin is visiting us and we're going to show him around. He's never seen the Pyramids.

Narrator : 3 Dina

Dina : We went on a school trip to find out how cotton is turned into clothes like T-shirts and dresses.

Narrator : 4 Youssef

Youssef : I want to borrow some books.



LESSON 2

Narrator : **Listen. Write the letters on the map, page 146**

Number A :

Ahmed : Excuse me, how can I get to the train station?

Police officer: You can walk in the Park Avenue. Go straight to the Main Street and cross the Station Road. It's on your left.

Ahmed : Thank you.

Number B :

Adel : Where's the supermarket, please?

Nabil : Go straight to the Park Avenue. Walk in the Main Street. Cross the Station Road. It's on your right.

Adel : Thank you, very much.

Number C :

Samir : Is there a café near here?

Ayman : Yes, go straight to the Park Avenue. Walk in the Main Street. Cross the Station Road. It's next to the supermarket.

Samir : Many thanks.



Review 4

LESSON 1

Narrator: **Write the missing letters. Listen and check, page 230**

1- dinosaur

2- passport

3- skeleton

4- tracks

5- binoculars

6- suitcase

7- archaeologist

8- station

LESSON 2

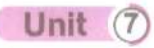
Narrator: **Listen and complete with the correct sound, page 232**

1- bathroom	2- enjoy
3- write	4- gray
5- play	6- mother



Listening Material

نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بأسئلة الاستماع الواردة فى الوحدات والاختبارات

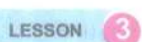


Unit 7

LESSON 1

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

My name is Fatma. I live in a modern apartment. There are four rooms in the apartment. The living room is next to the bedroom. I have three armchairs in the living room. The kitchen is big. I bake bread in the oven.



LESSON 3

In Ancient Egypt, people made their houses near the Nile. They used the Nile's water for drinking and cooking. They used mud from the river to make bricks. Some people painted their homes white to make them cooler.



LESSON 4

I'm Dalia. I went to my uncle's farm yesterday. He's a farmer. He lives in an old farmhouse. He keeps many animals. He has cows, chickens, goats and sheep. I played with the goats. They were very funny. My uncle grows wheat and tomatoes. The fields are brilliant. I enjoyed my day.

Al-Azhar Test

1. Listen and choose the correct answer:

My uncle is a vet .He loves animals. He has two children .His wife is a teacher. They are happy.

Test - Unit 7



My name is Ahmed. I live in a big house with my parents and my brother Hany. I love my bedroom. I share it with my brother. My bedroom is white and green. There is a desk next to my bed. On the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.



Unit 8

LESSON 1

My friend Amr didn't go the club yesterday. He had a sore throat. He didn't come to the football practice. He went to the doctor. The doctor told him to have hot drinks. Amr should stay home.

LESSON 3

My friend Hazem was ill yesterday. He went to the doctor. Hazem had a stomachache. His stomach hurts. The doctor said to him to stay home. Hazem took the medicine and felt well.

LESSON 4

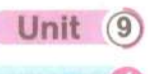
My name is Doaa. I like honey very much. When I have a sore throat, I have honey with lemon. Honey is very useful. It's used as a treatment. It's so good for healing wounds and treating illness. Some types of honey can kill bacteria.

Al-Azhar Test

I get up at six o'clock. I have my breakfast with my parents. I like honey. Honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years.

Test - Unit 8

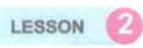
I like healthy food. It's important to eat healthy food. We should do some exercise with friends. Sleeping for eight hours is good for health. Playing sports at school or with friends is a good way to exercise.



Unit 9

LESSON 1

My uncle has a parrot in his house. It's colorful. Its name is Pingo. My uncle puts food and water for Pingo every day. The parrot can talk and repeat what we say. It has a beautiful beak and feathers.



LESSON 2

When Hisham was five, he could swim and talk. His brother, Nabil is two years younger than him. Nabil couldn't talk or walk, but he could listen to music. Now, Hisham is ten years old. He can use a computer and play chess, too. Nabil is eight years old. He can swim and sing.

Al-Azhar Test

I like birds. My favorite bird is the parrot. It is so beautiful and it can talk. I say some words for it to repeat.



Test - Unit 9

My favorite animal is the penguin. It lives in the ocean. It's a friendly animal. It swims in a group with his family. It looks cute and cold. It eats fish. I did a project about the penguin at school. My science teacher was very happy about my project.

Review 3



Test on units 7, 8 & 9



I'm Laila. I live in Giza. When my parents had to move to a new job, we moved to a closer apartment. It's a bigger apartment. It has four rooms. There's more space so we can have a bigger television in the living room. I like our new apartment.



Unit 10

LESSON 1

My name is Gamal. Every year, I go to Alexandria with my family. Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. It's a very big city. We always stay in a comfortable hotel near the beach. We always have lunch at a big restaurant.

LESSON 2

We should encourage our children to visit the library and read books. The children should keep the library clean. They should ask the librarian if they need help. They shouldn't run or make noise

LESSONS 4&5



My friend Nadia lives in a small town with her parents. Nadia likes to play with her friends after school. There is a park next to Nadia's house. She plays with her friends in this park.

Al-Azhar Test

Yesterday, I visited Alexandria with my friends. Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. It's a big city with lots of amazing restaurants and museums. There's even a beach.

Test - Unit 10



I'm Hisham. I go to Alexandria with my friends. Alexandria is a very big city. We always stay in a hotel near the beach. We always have lunch at the restaurant.

Unit 11

LESSON 1



I'm Osama. I went to Dubai last month. There are many high-rise buildings. I stayed in a lovely hotel room. There was a big swimming pool on the roof of the hotel. It was amazing. I went on a boat trip and went on rides at the theme park.

LESSON 2



Tourists visit many places in Egypt every year. They always want to check a comfortable hotel. They try traditional Egyptian food. They visit the Egyptian Museum. They also visit the old parts of Cairo. They like to go to Luxor and Aswan in winter.



LESSON 3



Hani can do a lot of activities on vacation. Hani goes to Alexandria in summer. He always goes there with his family. They can see the beach as they stay in a hotel in front of the sea. They swim in the sea and make sandcastles on the beach.

Al-Azhar Test

I went to the theme park with my father. We went on different rides. We took lots of photos with my camera. We had a great time.

Test - Unit 11

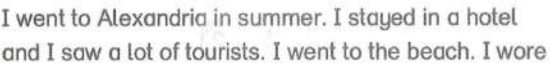


Ramy and Adam are friends. They are in primary five. Ramy likes playing football after school on Thursday. Adam likes swimming. He goes swimming on Friday with his sister, Rawan. Ramy and Adam have a good time.

Review 4

Test on units 10, 11 & 12





I went to Alexandria in summer. I stayed in a hotel and I saw a lot of tourists. I went to the beach. I wore my swimming suit and sunglasses.





PARENTS' GUIDE

CONNECT

ملحق تسميع المفردات
والواجب المنزلي

2025

5th

PRIMARY FIVE
SECOND TERM



ghazzahouse@gmail.com

الصف الخامس الإبتدائي
الفصل الدراسي الثاني

Unit 7 Homes in Egypt

Lesson 1



Vocabulary

دولاب / خزانة	كرسى ذو مسندين ....
فرن	سرير ....
تليفزيون	وسادة ....
مطبخ	مصعد ....
حجرة المعيشة	دش ....
حديث	حمام ....
رائع	بلكونه / شرفة ....
جديد	تقليدى ....
حجرة نوم	أقرب ....
مدينة صغيرة	شقة ....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يعيش	....	يفضل	....
ينتقل إلى (يعزل)	....	يطبخ	....
يشارك	....	يدخل	....

Lesson 2



Vocabulary

احد سكان القرى المحليين	قرد العواء (سعدان العواء) ....
محظوظ	يقوم بعمل بعض الأبحاث ....
مريح	ملصق ....
عميق	مثالى / رائع ....
تمثال	غير أمن ....
وحيد	غابة ....
مرعب / مخيف	مظلم ....
عادل	مطر غزير ....
يكون صداقات	مهتم بـ ....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يموت	....	يبتسم	....
يفتقد / يفوت	....	يزور	....
يحاول	....	يصرخ	....
ينشئ	....	يغادر	....
يرتدى	....	يقابل	....
يعرف	....	يخبر	....

Activities Lessons 1&2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We made pizza in our new .... المنيا - إدارة ابو قرقاص (2024)

   a shower b oven c cushion d closet

2. There are two cushions on my ....

   a elevator b bathroom c bed d shower

3. I .... a bedroom with my sister. المنوفية - إدارة منوف (2024)

   a do b share c give d work

4. Local .... are friendly and helpful.

   a jungles b villagers c posters d rains

5. My sister helped me put my clothes in the ....

   a shower b closet c kitchen d cushion

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

move - better - closet - left

In my new apartment, I have a big bedroom. It's much ❶ .... than my old bedroom. I share it with my sister. There are two beds. My sister's bed is on the ❷ .... On the wall, there's a clock. There's a brown ❸ .... next to the armchair.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة: بني سويف - إدارة ناصر (2024)

My name is Mona. I moved to a new apartment last week. I love this new apartment. It is much bigger than our **old** apartment. The new kitchen is bigger, and the oven is more modern. It's much easier to cook in. The living room is bigger than the old one so we can have a bigger television. We have three bedrooms now. I share a room with my sister, Dalia, but our bedroom is really big. I like our apartment.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. The opposite of the underlined word "**old**" is ....

   a new b ugly c dark d bad

2. Mona moved to a new __________ .

a school b class c apartment d city

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the text into a sentence. ____________________

4. How many bedrooms are there in the new apartment? ____________________

5. When did Mona move to a new apartment? ____________________

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. is - **My** - kitchen - new - bigger.

____

2. go down - in - alone - **Don't** - the street.

____

3. cousin - came - **My** - us - to - visit. المنوفية - إدارة قويسنا (2024)

____

4. living - **Do** - like - you - there?

____

5. about - the bedrooms - your - **What** - in - apartment?

____

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. We didn't __________ (**had**) lunch in our school.
2. They __________ (**go**) to the park with their parents yesterday. الشرقية - إدارة بلبيس (2024)
3. His grandpa __________ (**don't**) travel to Aswan last week.
4. I'm __________ (**happy**) because I lost my homework.
5. He loved this city because the people were __________ (**unfriendly**) .
6. My uncle knew he __________ (**is**) close to the howler monkeys.

Lesson 3



Vocabulary

إناء	الطين اللبن (طوب من الطين) ....
فرن	سطح المنزل ....
منطقة النوم	حصيرة من البوص ....
محاصيل	بوابة ....
الريف	مصر القديمة ....
طابق / دور في مبنى	أثاث ....
صندوق خشبى	البردى ....
ضفاف النهر	حشرات ....
نمط خاص	مختلف عن ....
رياح	قوى ....

Conjugation of verbs

Past	Present	Past	Present
....	يبنى	....	يستخدم ....
....	يهب (للرياح)	....	يطلى / يدهن ....
....	يشعر	....	يسترخي ....
....	يسقط	....	يخزن ....
....	يحافظ على / يربى	....	يربط ....

Lesson 4



Vocabulary

- رائع ....
- ممل ....
- شيق ....
- مضحك ....
- سكان محليون ....
- طاقة ....
- حفل ....
- حرارة ....
- ضوء ....
- حديث ....
- منازل غريبة ....
- التدوين فى مدونة ....
- بيئى / صديق للبيئة ....
- منزل ريفى ....
- منظر طبيعى ....
- فظيع ....
- مزعج ....
- مهندس معمارى ....
- عبر الإنترنت ....
- مقلوب رأساً على عقب ....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يغير	....	يناسب / يلائم	....
يعمل	....	يكتب	....
يجد	....	يحصل على	....



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. He lost the match last week, so he was .... قنا - إدارة الوقف (2023)

a lucky b nice c unhappy d pleased

2. The Ancient Egyptians used .... to make bricks.

a wool b cotton c glass d mud

3. She likes .... about cooking. دمياط - إدارة دمياط (2023)

a playing b blogging c growing d drinking

4. My uncle lives in a/an .... so he keeps a lot of animals.

a boat b farmhouse c building d apartment

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار: السويس - إدارة جنوب (2023)

mud - wooden - cooler - relax

Ancient Egyptians were very clever. They used 1 .... bricks to build their homes. They made 2 .... boxes to keep their clothes and amazing pots for storing crops. They also made reed mats to sit and 3 .... on.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Ahmed. I'm interested in unusual things around the world. One day, I found an unusual house in the Netherlands online. It's upside down! It is actually an old farmhouse which people are changing to make it modern. This works very well because all the windows are at the top, so you get a lot of light.

Local people like it because it fits in very well with the local landscape, which is farms and fields. It is also very ecological because they use air, water and sun to heat and make energy.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. Ahmed is interested in ---------- .

a farmhouses b unusual things c fields d landscape

2. The main idea of text is about ---------- .

a unusual houses b search online

c the Netherlands d local people

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Why is the unusual house ecological? ----------------------------

4. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence. ----------------------------

5. What did Ahmed find in the Netherlands online? ----------------------------

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. so - **This** - home - is - unusual - cool.

2: lives - in - **My** - an old - grandpa - farmhouse.

----

3. their - made - near - **They** - homes - the Nile.

----

4. blogging - **I** - different - like - about - things. الغربية - إدارة بسيون(2024)

----

5. is - a - **My** - architect - father - famous.

----

6. did - Ancient - their - homes - **How** - Egyptians - keep?

Unit 8 At the doctor's

Lesson 1

Vocabulary

سِنَّة	الم بالظهر ....
الم بالأسنان	برد ....
كحة / سعال	التهاب بالحلق ....
كتف	الم بالأذن ....
تدريب / تمرين	كاحل / رسغ القدم ....
حريص	مدرب ....
قلق	يشعر بتحسن ....
معدة	صداع ....
عسل	نادي ....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يأمل	....	يتكلم	....
يؤلم	....	يقول	....
مصاب بـ / يملك	....	يشعر	....

Lesson 2



Vocabulary

أفراد الأسرة	قريب(أقارب) ....
مزدحم	هيئة الموظفين (طاقم العاملين ....
حقن	طرقة - ممر ....
ضمادة	شخص مريض ....
حلق	جسر - كوبرى ....
مفيد	جرح ....
غير معتاد	منتظم ....
مسئول	مؤدب ....

Conjugation of verbs

Past	Present	Past	Present
....	يصبح	....	يقيم / يبقى ....
....	يتعلم	....	يعالج ....
....	يعتنى بـ	....	يقع / يسقط ....
....	يعطى	....	ينظف ....
....	يدخل	....	يحول / يلف ....



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The ---------- will check my teeth. (الدقهلية - إدارة غرب المنصورة (2024))

   a architect b dentist c farmer d engineer

2. There are too many people in my town, it's very ---------- .

   a quiet b calm c crowded d polite

3. The smoke from the kitchen made me ---------- .

   a cough b stay c learn d play

4. When the doctor gave her a/an ----------, she became better.

   a corridor b injection c cut d ankle

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

القليوبية - إدارة شبين القناطر (2024)

earache - cough - stomachache - stay

I was at school yesterday. My friends Hisham and Yasser didn't come to school. They were ill. Hisham had a ❶ .... and a sore throat, so he couldn't talk. Yasser had a ❷ .... because he ate a lot of food at his sister's party. Yasser and Hisham went to the doctor. The doctor said that they must ❸ .... home and sleep well.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة: مطروح - إدارة مطروح (2024)

Fares is sad. He didn't have a good day at the club. Five people didn't come to the club today because they had problems. His friend Tarek hurt his ankle at football practice last night. Amr has an earache from swimming. Lama has a toothache. She went to do the **dentist**. Two of his friends have a cold. The coach told them to be

careful when they have a cough or a sore throat. They should stay home. Fares is ill, too. He has a backache, and he is worried about his friends.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. The underlined word "**dentist**" means a doctor who takes care of our ....
   a bones   b lungs   c stomach   d teeth
2. .... has an earache from swimming.
   a Fares   b Lama   c Amr   d Tarek

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Why is Fares sad? ....
4. What should Fares' friends do when they have a cough or a sore throat? ....
5. What did Tarek hurt last night? ....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. have - a - **My** - doesn't - brother - cough. الجيزة - إدارة الحوامدية (2024)
....
2. take - and - medicine - **Stay** - home - the. الشرقية - الصالحية الجديدة (2024)
....
3. cut - **I** - on the - put - a bandage.
....
4. ankle - at - hurt - club - **Wesam** - his - the. الغربية - إدارة السنطة (2024)
....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Does she .... (**had**) a cough?
2. He's a good boy. He's .... (**impolite**) .
3. They .... (**has**) an earache. الفيوم - إدارة أبشواي (2024)
4. Karim .... (**don't**) have a headache.
5. What does Amr .... (**has**) ?

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. Don t worry, nahla. ....
2. i don't have a backache ....

Lesson 3



Vocabulary

جرح	ضمادة ....
عسل و ليمون	كريم واقى من الشمس ....
علاج	أقراص دواء ....
حروق الشمس	جرح بالركبة ....
بكتيريا	إصابات ....
أمراض	رعاية طبية ....
مادة	شاحنة مغلقة ....
منظر طبيعي	برطمان ....
معدية	وشاح ....
علماء	حلو المذاق ....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يستمتع بـ	....	يتحسن	....
يقتل	....	يجرح	....
يعالج	....	يتلف	....
يصنع	....	يعرف	....

Lessons 4 & 5



Vocabulary

عرض تقديمي	لعب الرياضة ....
قضاء وقت مع الأصدقاء	نظام غذائي متوازن ....
النوم بشكل كافي	خبير / خبراء ....
تمرين / تدريب	دبوس مشبك ....
قفازات طبية	مناديل تنظيف مبللة ....
يحافظ علي صحته	كريم ضد لدغ الحشرات ....
مهم	مفيد ....
صابون	مقص ....
صندوق الاسعافات الاولية	أربطة مطاطية ....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يتمرن	....	يحصل على	....
يحافظ	....	يقضي	....
يحتاج	....	يأكل	....
يعتني	....	يفعل	....





1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. .... makes your cough better.

a Bacteria b Honey c Sunscreen d Wound

2. I have a headache, so I'll take ....

a sunscreen b bandage c pills d a pin

3. The nurses know how to .... bandages. الإسماعيلية - إدارة الإسماعيلية (2024)

a change b kill c damage d eat

4. We need some milk and .... for our cough. الفيوم -إدارة شرق الفيوم (2023)

a cola b tea c juice d honey

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

school - treatments - patients - honey

My father is a doctor. He works in a big hospital. He gets up early and goes to the hospital. He examines the ❶ .... and gives them ❷ .... Yesterday, I had a sore throat. He advised me to drink ❸ .... and lemon.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

In some countries, honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years. It was first used to treat wounds by Egyptian doctors around 5,000 years ago. Recently, scientists have tried to find out exactly why honey is so good for healing wounds and treating illnesses.

Scientists know that some types of honey contain things that can help to kill bacteria. This helps wounds to **heal** more quickly. You must be careful, however and don't put honey on your cut knee.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. The text is mainly about ....

a illnesses b honey c bacteria d wounds

2. The underlined word "**heal**" means to ....

a damage b find out c discover d get better

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence. ....

4. Why is honey used as a treatment? ....

5. When did the Egyptian doctors use honey to treat wounds? ....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. pet - I - frog - a - have.

....

2. good - treating - It's - for - illnesses.

....

3. put - Don't - on - knee - honey - your - cut. (الغربية -إدارة بسيون (2024))

....

4. like - Hisham - honey - Does - eating?

....

5. have - a - You - balanced - should - diet.

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. We should .... (doing) some exercise every day.
2. It's important to .... (ate) vegetables. (الشرقية -إدارة بلبيس (2023))
3. My presentation today .... (are) about staying healthy.
4. Doctors .... (uses) honey thousands of years ago.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

is honey very useful

....

March Tests 1

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. I like eating honey for ....
   a dinner b lunch c breakfast d snack
2. Some types of honey can kill ....
   a bacteria b cuts c insects d bees
3. Honey helps .... to heal more quickly.
   a wounds b teeth c coughs d fevers
4. Don't put honey on your cut ....
   a arm b knee c head d ankle

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Ancient Egyptians slept on reed ....
   a bricks b ovens c bats d mats
2. I have a pet .... at home.
   a frog b fan c ferry d leaf
3. We have a new .... which is much easier to cook in. المنوفية - إدارة أشمون (2024)
   a shower b oven c television d closet

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

friendly - monkey - desert - research

My uncle Ahmed is a scientist and he loves animals. He is very interested in howler ❶ .... He is doing a ❷.......... about them. They live in South America deep in the jungle. Local people helped him with his work. They were very kind and ❸ ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My name's Hana. I was born in Cairo and I lived there for 12 years. Then, my parents had to move to a new job, so we moved to a new apartment in Port Said. I liked living in Port Said. It's a small, clean and quiet city. We can go to the beach

at any time. There are many parks. My new apartment is big. It has three bedrooms, one kitchen, two bathrooms and a big living room. There's a fantastic balcony. in the living room

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Hana is from.............................. now.

a Port Said b Alexandria c Cairo d Aswan

2. Hana's new apartment is.............................. .

بورسعيد - إدارة بورسعيد (2023)

a big b small c high d fat

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Where can they go in Port Said? ---------------------------------

4. How many bedrooms are there in Hana's new apartment? ---------------

5. Why did Hana's parents move to a new apartment? ---------------

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. unsafe - to go - It's - the jungle - to. ---------------------------------
2. help - bacteria - Honey - can - to kill. ---------------------------------

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. ------------ (Are) you have a sore throat?
2. My parents ------------ (buy) a new apartment last week.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. it s important to be healthy. ---------------------------------
2. does he have a cough ---------------------------------

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

The furniture in Ancient Egypt

Guiding words:

reed mats - papyrus

March Tests 2

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Dalia likes__________about different things.
   - a writing
   - b blogging
   - c reading
   - d talking
2. Dalia is writing about unusual__________.
   - a animals
   - b insects
   - c homes
   - d sports
3. Dalia found the upside down house in__________.
   - a the Netherlands
   - b France
   - c Marrakech
   - d Amman
4. People are changing the house to make it__________.
   - a bigger
   - b modern
   - c cleaner
   - d higher

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. His grandpa is very kind, she always gives him __________. الدقهلية - إدارة غرب المنصورة (2024)
   - a homework
   - b gifts
   - c views
   - d balconies
2. The __________ is a medical care to help you get better. الشرقية - إدارة غرب الزقازيق (2023)
   - a wound
   - b treatment
   - c cut
   - d sunburn
3. Did you have a __________ throat?
   - a tooth
   - b sore
   - c stomach
   - d fever

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

sunburn - earache - pills - headache

Tamer was sad yesterday. Two of his friends were sick. Samir had an ❶ .... from swimming. The coach told Tamer to be careful. Nabil had a ❷.................... . He went to the doctor and gave him some ❸ ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

To stay healthy, it's important to follow a balanced diet and eat fresh fruit and vegetables. Some doctors say that having some honey in the morning can kill bacteria. It can also give you energy. Moreover, you should do exercise every day.

For example, walking to school or playing sports at school is a good way to exercise. Don't forget to drink a lot of water. Having enough sleep is also important if you want to stay healthy. It's important to have eight hours of sleep every night.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. Having fresh ---------- keeps you healthy.
   a) sweets b) candies c) vegetables d) animals
2. Playing sports is a good way to ----------.
   a) exercise b) eat c) travel d) kill

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What does the underlined pronoun "**It**" refer to? ----------
4. How many sleeping hours should you have every night? ----------
5. What can honey kill? ----------

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. stay - How - you - healthy - can? ----------
2. bedrooms - a kitchen - have - We - and - three. ----------

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. What ---------- (do) Tamer have?
2. Where did the Ancient Egyptians ---------- (got) mud?

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. my uncle was interested in howler monkeys ----------.
2. what did you do yesterday ----------

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Different illnesses

Guiding words:

fever - toothache

Unit 9 My favorite animal

Lesson 1



Vocabulary

خفاش	حيوان الكنغر ....
دولفين	بطريق ....
حلزون	الباندا ....
ببغاء	قوى ....
زاهى / كثير الالوان	جميل ....
مختلف	مدهش ....
مذهل	ودود / أليف ....
رائع / جذاب	الظلام ....
ينام بالمقلوب	حديقة الحياة البرية ....
قوقعة	غابة مطيرة ....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يقفز	....	يطير	....
يمكث	....	يعوم	....
يريد	....	ينام	....

	يختبئ		يستمتع
	يطعم		يردد

Lesson 2



Vocabulary

مشغول	بسرعة / سريع
يلعب الشطرنج	يستخدم الكمبيوتر
مندهش	بسرعة جداً
يتحدث اللغة الانجليزية	مكسرات
فرع شجرة	منهك (متعب جداً)
جذع شجرة	نسيم (رياح خفيفة)
ظل	مريح
تجار	نقطة التقاء / تجمع
ناكر الجميل	مشهور
غير عطوف	مأوى
يستريح / راحة	عديم الفائدة

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يتحدث	......	يأخذ	......
يطير	......	يركب	......
يجرى	......	يعوم	......
يقوم	......	يقرأ	......



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We could see kangaroos inside their mom's ....
   a pocket   b pouch   c bag   d shell
2. A .... lives in Australia. It jumps on two legs. (القاهرة - إدارة المطرية 2024)
   a kangaroo   b lion   c sail   d bat
3. The .... sleeps upside down on the trees.
   a dolphin   b parrot   c bat   d penguin
4. The snail has a .... and doesn't have legs or arms. (دمياط - إدارة دمياط الجديدة 2023)
   a shell   b back   c tail   d wing
5. The bats were .... in the dark.
   a hiding   b writing   c feeding   d singing

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

travelers - trucks - branches - lived

Once there was a very big old tree in a hot, dry land. It had ❶ .... for many years. Its trunk was very wide and it had many green ❷ .... It was famous because it was the only tree where it lived. It gave shelter and rest to hundreds of ❸ .... as they moved across the country.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. is - a little - wind - **A breeze**.

---

2. rested - **We** - under - tree - the.

---

3. a friendly - sea - is - animal - **A dolphin**.

---

4. can - **Kangaroos** - very - high - jump. القليوبية - إدارة غرب شبرا (2024)

---

5. do - penguins - live - **Where**? الإسكندرية - إدارة برج العرب (2023)

---

6. study - you - English - **Could** - yesterday?

---

7. somewhere - people - **A meeting** - meet - point - is - where.

---

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Now I .... (**could**) play the piano. الدقهلية - إدارة غرب المنصورة (2023)
2. They .... (**could to**) help their mother.
3. We .... (**can't**) drive a car, but now we can. القاهرة - إدارة السلام (2023)
4. My father .... (**couldn't**) speak German now.
5. Can parrots .... (**flying**) in the sky?
6. I couldn't .... (**spoke**) English when I was five. الفيوم - إدارة اطسا (2024)
7. He could swim when he .... (**be**) seven years old.
8. What could you .... (**does**) when you were three years old?

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

penguins live on ice and snow ....

Lesson 3

Vocabulary

حوت	مشهور ....
عجلة (اطار سيارة)	ممتاز ....
الشتاء	محترف ....
مبلل	يسترخى ....
يرن	بركان ....
قرية	آله الكمان ....
شيق	الغرب ....
مدهش	سترة (صديرى) ....
منزعج	زهرة ....
مهتم	مفاجئ ....

Conjugation of verbs

Past	Present	Past	Present
....	يجلس	....	يقرر ....
....	يقابل	....	يرتدى ....
....	يجد	....	يأتى ....

Lessons 4 & 5



Vocabulary

بريد إلكتروني	حيوان غير مألوف ....
ارض عشبية	الاطوم (بقر البحر) ....
نسبة مئوية	اسم الشهرة ....
طائر العقاب	قاع البحر ....
ذئب	بارد ....
دافئ	بيئة الحيوان أو النبات ....
ثور امريكى	جميل ....
محبوب	سطح ....
مخطط معلومات بيانى	قطبى ....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يسمع	....	يقضى	....
يأمل	....	يدع / يسمح	....



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Eagles, wolves and .... are animals that live on grasslands.
   a bisons b dugongs c dolphins d whales
2. This book is very .... I want to read it again.
   a boring b tiring c interesting d ugly
3. Bats can .... upside down on trees. المنيا - إدارة العدوة (2023)
   a sleep b sing c swim d speak
4. Dugongs spend many hours eating grass from the sea ....
   a table b chair c bed d floor

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

القاهرة - إدارة الشروق (2024)

bed - dugong - dog - cow

This week we are talking about unusual animals at school. We looked at animals from around the world and some from Egypt. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the ❶ .... I think it's got a lovely friendly face. Its nickname is the sea ❷.......... , and it spends many hours eating grass from the sea ❸ .... every day.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Noha is interested in animals. She reads many books about them. She also watches programmes about animal habitats. She loves the kangaroos, penguins and parrots. The kangaroos are interesting. They live in Australia. The penguins are black and white. They live on ice and snow.

She reads about the dugong. It's a marine animal. It lives all its life in water. It eats grass from the sea bed. It's cute and has got lovely friendly face.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. Noha is interested in ....
   a plants b animals c colors d reading
2. Noha watches programmes about animal ....
   a habitats b food c life d bodies

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What has the dugong got? -----------------------------------
4. Where do penguins live? -----------------------------------
5. What color are the penguins? -----------------------------------

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. a photo - **She** - to - Tarek - sent. الجيزة - إدارة الهرم (2024)

----

2. tiring - **Our** - trip - school - was - very.

----

3. once - on - **I** - a week - play - a team.

----

4. cousin - **My** - a very - is - reader - good. القليوبية - إدارة بنها (2024)

----

5. talking - an unusual - **We're** - animal - about.

----

6. eat - the sea - **What** - cow - does?

----

7. Emad's - **What's** - unusual - favorite - animal?

----

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. My favorite ------------ (**teaching**) is Miss Mona, she's very kind and helpful.
2. Uncle Youssef is very ------------ (**interesting**) in the rocks. أسيوط - إدارة الفتح (2023)
3. The trip I went yesterday was very ------------ (**bored**) . الشرقية - إدارة ههيا (2023)
4. My uncle is a very good ------------ (**read**) . الجيزة - إدارة أوسيم (2023)
5. When I was six, I ------------ (**can't**) play tennis.

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. omar doesn t like sport. -----------------------------------
2. i hope to hear from you soon -----------------------------------

Unit 10 We love Alexandria

Lesson 1

Vocabulary

سوق	بنك ....
فندق	مصنع ....
مطعم	مكتبة ....
سوبر ماركت	نُصب تذكارى / أثر ....
شاطيء	ميدان ....
تقاليد	مول تجارى ....
شاى بالنعناع	محطة ....
مأكولات / أطباق محلية	متحف ....
حضارة / ثقافة	سائح ....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يقدم طعام	....	يكتشف	....
يُذكر	....	يعتقد	....
يملك	....	يري	....

Lesson 2

Vocabulary

زر	البيئة ....
أمين المكتبة	قمامة ....
معذرة	صندوق قمامة ....
غدا	زهرة ....
على اليسار	سر بشكل مباشر ....
الطابق العلوى	على اليمين ....
فى نهاية	بصوت عالى ....

Conjugation of verbs

Past	Present	Past	Present
....	يستدير	....	ينتظر ....
....	يفقد	....	يغلق ....
....	يعبر	....	يضغط / يدفع ....
....	يقف	....	يختار ....
....	يحضر	....	يعود ....
....	يقفز	....	يمشى ....
....	يضيع	....	يجرى ....

Activities Lessons 1&2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Keep the environment ....
   a clean b dirty c boring d interested
2. Don't .... up flowers, please.
   a help b pick c plant d walk
3. I ate some local cuisine from a famous .... سوهاج - إدارة طهطا (2024)
   a restaurant b bank c museum d station
4. We should encourage our .... to visit the library.
   a stores b children c trips d traditions
5. We can .... books from the library. الإسماعيلية - إدارة الإسماعيلية (2023)
   a borrow b sell c lose d buy

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

الشرقية - إدارة ههيا (2023)

librarian - talk - cell - return

When we go to our school library, we should follow the library rules. We shouldn't eat in the library. We can't use our ❶ .... phone. We should ask the ❷ .... if we need help. We should ❸ .... the book to its place.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة: دمياط - إدارة دمياط الجديدة (2023)

Alexandria is a really **exciting** place to visit. There's a lot to see and do here! It's a big city with lots of amazing restaurants, stores, markets and museums. There's even a beach! My friend is visiting Alexandria from Germany. He thinks it's really cool here. He thinks there are some good museums. He loves just sitting in the roof garden of his hotel, drinking sweet Egyptian mint tea and chatting to other people. It's very relaxing.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. My friend likes drinking mint tea in the ....
   a museum b roof c park d market

2. The underlined word "**exciting**" means ....

a ugly b bad c wonderful d boring

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the text in one sentence. ....

4. Why does the writer's friend like to visit Alexandria? ....

5. Where does the writer's friend love sitting? ....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. shouldn't - lose - **You** - book - your.

....

2. waste - **Never** - time - your.

....

3. a big - **There's** - in - station - my town.

....

4. on - left - **The** - the - factory - is. بورسعيد - إدارة المناخ (2024)

....

5. near - a shopping - **Is** - here - there - mall?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Don't .... (ate) in the library.

2. Please, ... (picks) up this trash.

3. .... (Kept) the library clean. الدقهلية - إدارة طلخا (2024)

4. .... (Turned) left. The shop is on the right.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. drink your water outside the library ....

2. is there a bank near here .... بني سويف - إدارة إهناسيا (2024)

Lesson 3



Vocabulary

تائه	....	غريب المظهر	....
أكياس الفاصوليا	....	أحمق	....
حيوان الجربوع	....	مخلوق	....
أغصان / فروع	....	طائر ابو منجل	....
التجار	....	قروى (احد سكان القرية)	....
ثعبان	....	بوقاحة	....
مظلم	....	أصوات	....
ذكى	....	حشد / جمهور	....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يعتذر	....	يتظاهر	....
يتعرف على	....	يبيع	....
يلتفت	....	يفهم	....
يقرر	....	يقول	....
يطير	....	يمشى بعيداً	....
يبدأ	....	يسلى / يرفه	....

Lessons 4 & 5

Vocabulary

رحلة بالقارب	أماكن جذب السياح ....
متنزه مائى	مريح ....
الحضارة / الثقافة	مراكز التسوق ....
الفنون	المسارح ....
رائع	موقع ....
طازج	نزهة خلوية ....
كوبرى	الحديقة الدولية ....
مبهر / ساحر	أثرى ....
لذيذ	تاريخ ....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
تمطر	....	يختار	....
يزور	....	يطعم	....
يشجع	....	يأخذ	....





1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. This man is foolish. He speaks ---------- .
   a politely b rudely c kindly d nicely
2. I couldn't ---------- this strange creature.
   a apologize b recognize c pretend d begin
3. You can see a lot of ---------- in the museum. الجيزة - إدارة البدرشين (2024)
   a treasure b bridge c rivers d buses
4. We had a ---------- in the park yesterday.
   a boat b picnic c history d traffic
5. The ---------- sell their things at the market.
   a librarians b vets c traders d readers

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

الفيوم - إدارة شرق الفيوم (2023)

beach - large - visit - learn

There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein. The city is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. This beautiful ❶ .... is 14 kms long! There is also a ❷ .... ,green lake right in the middle of the city! You can also ❸ .... the beautiful International Park. If you want to learn about the fascinating history of the area, then visit the Archaeological Center.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

الغربية - إدارة شرق طنطا (2024) أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

In our perfect town, there is a big zoo next to the school. We can go there every afternoon after classes. We can help to feed the animals. It is really hot in our town, so there is a waterpark that is always open. It is free to go in. There is a wonderful market that sells all kinds of delicious foods. We love our town very much.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. This text is about a ----------- .
   a restaurant b town c library d shopping mall
2. We can go to the ---------- when it is hot.
   a bookshop b supermarket c waterpark d school

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Where is the zoo? ---------------------------------------
4. What does the market sell? ---------------------------------------
5. What is always open in the town? ---------------------------------------

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. in - our - **There's** - town - a waterpark.

----

2. lessons - did - **What** - learn - Gabi?

----

3. on - city - the beach - **This** - is. (الجيزة - إدارة أوسيم (2024))

----

4. an ibis - and - met - **Gabi** - a snake.

----

5. perfect - town - our - **This** - is.

----

6. was - and - **Gabi** - sorry - foolish. (البحيرة - إدارة دمنهور (2024))

----

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. new Alamein is on the beach

----

2. It s really hot in our town

April Tests 1

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة: بورسعيد - إدارة شرق شمال (2023)

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. There are many .... we should follow in the library.
   - a phones
   - b walls
   - c books
   - d rules
2. We shouldn't eat in the ....
   - a restaurant
   - b library
   - c park
   - d hotel
3. We shouldn't use our .... there.
   - a books
   - b pens
   - c cell phones
   - d rules
4. We shouldn't .... our books.
   - a save
   - b read
   - c lose
   - d keep

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The ibis is a beautiful .... الفيوم - إدارة شرق الفيوم (2024)
   - a sack
   - b trader
   - c creature
   - d crowd
2. Don't run in the library. Walk ....
   - a loudly
   - b quietly
   - c quickly
   - d badly
3. I went to the wildlife .... and saw many animals. القليوبية - إدارة شبرا الخيمة (2024)
   - a home
   - b hospital
   - c school
   - d park

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

kangaroos - bamboo - awesome - pouch

I went to a school trip in the wildlife park. I had a great day. It was an ❶ .... trip. I saw many wild animals. I saw the ❷ .... They were interesting. I could see the lions running through the trees. I saw the pandas. They are black and white. They eat ❸ ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Hi! My name's Yasser. I have a big farm. I've got a lot of animals. I grow many fruits and vegetables. I live in a traditional house. I have a big garden around my house.

I keep a beautiful parrot in my garden in a big cage. I like parrots very much. This parrot my uncle bought it for me on my last birthday. My parrot's name is Pingo. I feed it every day. His feathers are colorful. It can talk. I say some words for it to **repeat**.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. Pingo is the name of my ---------- .

a bird b rabbit c parrot d fish

2. The word "**repeat**" means ---------- it again.

a play b say c eat d draw

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the first paragraph into one sentence. ------------------------

4. Who bought the parrot for Yasser? ------------------------

5. When did Yasser feed the parrot? ------------------------

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. shell - The - has - snail - a. ------------------------

2. is - the - Where's - , please - factory? ------------------------ الاسماعيلية - إدارة الاسماعيلية (2024)

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. ------------ (Went) straight on, then turn right.

2. She ------------ (can't) drive a car when she was a child.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. The kangaroos live in australia ------------------------

2. is the city on the beach ------------------------

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Your city, Alexandria

Guiding phrases

- exciting place - amazing restaurants

April Tests 2

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Peter is from ....
   a Italy b America c Alexandria d England
2. Alexandria is a beautiful .... near the sea.
   a town b shop c city d village
3. Peter loves the .... of modern and old buildings.
   a view b mix c sight d difference
4. Peter likes to find out about the .... and traditions.
   a culture b directions c languages d illnesses

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A .... can walk, but it has no legs.
   a panda b parrot c snake d penguin
2. In the library, you have to .... your books back in two weeks.
   a lose b bring c win d throw
3. I visited New Alamein on my summer .... المنوفية - إدارة الشهداء (2024)
   a information b vacation c station d transportation

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

buy - live - fresh - cuisine

I've lived in Alexandria all my life. I own a restaurant here so I have to say that you must visit my restaurant. You can try some of the local ❶ .... We serve traditional Egyptian food using lovely ❷ .... local ingredients. We have excellent supermarkets, but I prefer to ❸ .... my ingredients at the market in the old town.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة: القليوبية - إدارة غرب شبرا (2023)

My name is Mego. I am a two-year old penguin. I live in the South Pole. A funny thing about me is that I am a bird with wings, but I can't fly! I use my wings to swim.

They help me swim underwater really fast. Another funny thing about me is that some people say that I look like I'm wearing a fancy jacket. The black and white colors help me hide from dangerous animals. I really love cold weather. My thick feathers make me pretty warm.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Penguins use their wings to ....

a eat b fly c sleep d swim

2. The black and white colors help penguins hide from dangerous ....

a jackets b photos c animals d people

B. Answer the following questions:

3. How old is Mego? ------------------------------------

4. Where does Mego, the penguin live? ---------------------------

5. What does the penguin's thick feather make it? ---------------------

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. waste - your - Never - time. ---------------------------------

2. penguins - the - live - Where - do? ----------------------------- (الإسكندرية - إدارة برج العرب (2024))

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Hossam couldn't ---------- (played) the guitar at six.

2. ---------- (Are) there a hospital in the square?

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. noha is a good librarian ----------------------------------

2. where's the supermarket, please ----------------------------

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Your trip to wildlife

Guiding questions

1- What did you see in the wildlife park?

2- How was your trip at the end?



Lesson 1



Vocabulary

شاطيء	....	فندق	....
كاميرا	....	حقيبة سفر	....
مدينة	....	حمام سباحة	....
متحف	....	ناطحة سحاب	....
مطار	....	ملاهى	....
نظارة شمس	....	تذكرة	....
سائح	....	جواز سفر	....
رحلة جوية	....	أجازة / عطلة	....
ابن	....	أثار القدم	....
ابنة	....	طابق / دور فى مبنى	....
زوج	....	جزيرة	....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يصل	....	يقضى (وقت)	....
يزور	....	يطير / يسافر جوا	....
يستريح	....	يغادر	....
يحزم (حقائب)	....	ينام	....

Lesson 2



Vocabulary

تدوينة في المفكرة اليومية	يسجل وصوله للفندق ....
يتجول	تقليدى ....
مصنوعات يدوية	رحلة نهارية (فى النهار) ....
أكشاك	مفكرة يومية ....
مرشد سياحى	منشور / كراسة دعائية ....
مقابلة	استكشاف ....
جهة الوصول	حضارة / ثقافة ....
وطن	قلعة ....

Conjugation of verbs

Past	Present	Past	Present
....	يقود (سيارة)	....	يصل للفندق ....
....	يسجل (يدون)	....	يتوجه إلى ....
....	يعود	....	يطفو ....
....	يكتشف	....	يتجول فى ....
....	يقابل	....	يركب ....
....	يستكشف	....	يشترى ....
....	يصل	....	يحمل ....



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We need a .... to travel to different countries.
   a camera b passport c computer d phone
2. There are a lot of clothes in my .... الشرقية - إدارة كفر صقر (2024)
   a suitcase b bottle c sunglasses d ticket
3. The Dead Sea is .... for our skin.
   a bad b good c unhealthy d unlucky
4. We had the chance to .... through the streets.
   a wander b pack c float d discover

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

المنيا - إدارة مغاغة (2024)

last - trip - email - sister

Today, Mom received an email. It's from her sister Nadia, and her husband Hani. They are on a business ① .... traveling around the world. Nadia and Hani were in India ② .... week, and this week they are in Singapore. Mom is reading the ③ .... aloud to her daughter Rana and her son Ali.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Today was the best day ever! I went with my father by plane to Amman. It was the first time to travel by plane. We went to the Memphis restaurant and enjoyed a traditional Jordanian meal. We spend a nice time there. We had the chance to wander through the streets and I bought a lovely colorful rug for my mom. Then, I went to the museum and saw beautiful paintings.

Tomorrow we will head out of the city for a day trip to As-Salt and we will find lots of local Jordanian culture. The market is wonderful and there are many traditional arts and crafts to buy.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. The text is mainly about ....

a a trip to Amman
b a flight to a restaurant
c beautiful paintings
d wonderful markets

2. The writer bought a colorful rug for his ....

a father
b mom
c sister
d cousin

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence. ....
4. What did the writer enjoy in the Memphis restaurant? ....
5. Where will the writer head out tomorrow? ....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. very - was - Our - comfortable - room. ....
2. we - go - Shall - on - shopping - the weekend? ....
3. bought - a lovely - I - colorful - rug. ....
4. packed - We - suitcases - vacation - on - our. ....
5. to - London - landed - Our - at - flight - seven. ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. We studied English .... (in) six o'clock.
2. They traveled to Alexandria .... (for) May 12th. أسوان - إدارة أدفو (2024)
3. We'll meet our friend Emad .... (at) Monday.
4. We went to Port Said .... (in) holiday.
5. .... (On) the evening, we do our homework. دمياط - إدارة دمياط الجديدة (2023)
6. They open the shop .... (on) nine o'clock.

Lesson 3



Vocabulary

مقعد طويل	يذهب فى إجازة ....
مذهل	حزين أو محبط قليلا ....
ملعب	وجبة ....
مار بـ / عابراً	عرض (مسرحى) ....
فجأة	أخر / اضافى ....
مدهش	رائع ....
ممتع / شيق	ممكن ....
جميل	لطيف / بارد ....
نشيط	تكلفة ....
شهرة	ضخم ....

Conjugation of verbs

Past	Present	Past	Present
....	يأتى	....	يتصل تليفونيا ....
....	يعتقد	....	يوافق ....
....	يجد	....	يصيح ....
....	يعرف	....	يجلس ....

Lesson 4



Vocabulary

متحف	معالم سياحية ....
كثبان رملية	مفكرة يومية ....
اكلات شعبية	فرنسا ....
مصنوعات يدوية	برج ايفل (باريس) ....
طاه / طباخ	رحلة قصيرة ....
كشك	التجول ....
سلاحف	معدن ....
ثقافى / حضارى	الغطس ....
ذو الوان زاهية	تقليدى ....

Conjugation of verbs

Past	Present	Past	Present
....	يفهم	....	يحاول ....
....	يجارى	....	ينتظر ....
....	يتكلم	....	يزور ....
....	يُذكر	....	يشتمل ....

Activities Lessons 3-4&5



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I sat on the ---------- and enjoyed watching the beautiful plants in the park.
   a) bed b) closet c) bench d) couch
2. The Eiffel tower in Paris is made of ---------- . بورسعيد - إدارة المناخ (2024)
   a) leather b) metal c) plastic d) glass
3. We went to the local restaurant and saw the ---------- making delicious dishes.
   a) chef b) architect c) tourist d) trader
4. Be careful, the snake is ---------- . الغربية - إدارة السنطة (2024)
   a) expensive b) poisonous c) perfect d) traditional

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

cafés - playground - picnic - vacations

Al-Azhar Park is the largest and most beautiful park in Cairo. We can spend a lot of time there. There are tall trees and it has more plants. It also has a lake and ❶ ...., too. There is a space for all your family to have a big ❷........................ . I like going there with my friends on ❸ ....

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

أقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة: دمياط - إدارة دمياط الجديدة (2023)

Last vacation, I went to the Pyramids in Giza. I went there by bus. My friend Hisham went with me. There, I enjoyed my time. We saw wonderful monuments that the Ancient Egyptians built. We saw the Sphinx. **Its** head looks like the man's face. Hisham rode the camel. Then, we spoke with the tourists. We were happy to speak English well. We had a big picnic. After that we returned back home at five o'clock.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. We went by ---------- to the Pyramids.
   a) train b) bus c) taxi d) car

2. The underlined pronoun "**Its**" refers to the ....

a Pyramids b Egyptians c camel d Sphinx

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What's the main idea of the text? ....

4. Who did they speak with? ....

5. What did Hisham ride at the Pyramids? ....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. perfect - **Did** - have - a - vacation - you?

....

2. went - on - **Who** - trip - a boat? (كفر الشيخ - إدارة دسوق (2024))

....

3. very - people - were - **The French** - kind.

....

4. things - **What** - did - see - in - the park - you?

....

5. did - **When** - to - you - restaurant - go - the traditional?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Crocodiles are .... (danger) animals. (القليوبية - إدارة طوخ (2024))
2. Mohamed Salah is a very .... (fame) footballer. (بورسعيد - إدارة بورسعيد (2023))
3. That cell phone is very .... (expense) . I can't buy it.
4. Noha can solve any problems. She's .... (create) .
5. Don't touch this .... (poison) snake.

General Tests



امتحانات المحافظات على منهج الفصل الدراسى الثاني

1 محافظة القاهرة

إدارة دار السلام التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Once there was a very .... old tree.
   a small b big c short d tall
2. The trunk of the tree was very ....
   a clean b hard c wide d small
3. The tree has many green ....
   a seeds b flowers c branches d fruits
4. The tree gave .... and rest to hundreds of travelers.
   a shelter b home c food d heat

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Many tourists like visiting Egypt because of the .... places in it.
   a brilliant b awful c bad d boring
2. I can't hear well, I have a/an ....
   a cold b backache c earache d cough
3. This boy is ...., he never thanks anyone for doing something good.
   a polite b friendly c calm d ungrateful

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

fish - bricks - water - keep

In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the Nile. They used its (1) .... for drinking, cooking and washing. They also used mud from the river to make (2) .... for their houses. The mud bricks made very strong walls. Ancient Egyptians wanted to (3) .... their homes cool. The mud bricks helped do this.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years. It was first used to treat wounds by Egyptian doctors around 5,000 years ago. Honey is used as a treatment for some injuries. Some types of honey that the doctors use is a special kind of honey that is safe to use as a treatment. If you have honey in your cupboard, you can make it with milk to make your cough better.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Honey has been used by doctors for thousands of ....

a weeks   b months   c years   d days

2. The text is about ....

a Egyptian papyrus   b tea
c howler monkeys   d honey

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What kind of honey did doctors use? ....
4. What was honey used for? ....
5. Why do we mix honey with milk? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. the - is - factory, - **Where** - please? ....
2. howler - **Could** - hear - you - the - monkeys? ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Can you .... (**climbs**) a tree?
2. .... (**Doesn't**) talk to your friends at the classroom.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. His birthday is in august ....
2. did you go by bus ....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

My apartment

Guiding phrases

modern kitchen - balcony

....

....

2 محافظة الجيزة

إدارة أوسيم التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Ahmed lives in ....
   a Giza b Cairo c Aswan d Alexandria
2. Alexandria is in the .... of Egypt.
   a north b south c west d east
3. Alexandria has a nice ....
   a time b weather c park d place
4. Alexandria is famous for the beautiful ....
   a buildings b towns c beaches d stores

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Last year, he .... play chess, but now he can.
   a can b can't c couldn't d don't
2. We have a new .... which much easier to cook in.
   a television b closet c shower d oven
3. Spending time with your friends is good for your ....
   a health b sleep c cut d food

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

fun - dive - restaurant - beach

Alexandria is a big city near the sea. I like spending my vacation there. My favorite place is the ❶ .... I can swim and ❷ .... under water. It's great to go there and have ❸ ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Ali had a bad day yesterday. He went to the club, but only five of his friends came. They had problems. His friend Tarek hurt his ankle at football practice last night. Amr had an earache from swimming. Two of his friends had a cold. His cousin Sarah went to the dentist because she had a toothache. Ali was very worried about his friends.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about Ali's ....

   a parents   b family   c sisters   d friends

2. Ali was very .... about his friends.

   a happy   b worried   c unfair   d tired

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the paragraph in one sentence. ....
4. Where did Ali go yesterday? ....
5. Why did Sarah go to the dentist? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. homes - think of - unusual - **What** - you - do? ....
2. the club - at - a good - **We** - day - had. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. .... (**are**) you have a stomachache?
2. The trip I went yesterday was very .... (**bored**).

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. my uncle was very happy indeed ....
2. do you have a stomachache ....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Old Egyptian's Houses

Guiding phrases

had flat roofs - keep their homes cool

....

....

3 محافظة القليوبية

إدارة طوخ التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Omar loves his ....
   - a bedroom
   - b kitchen
   - c living room
   - d modern
2. On the right, there is a/an .... with two cushions.
   - a bed
   - b armchair
   - c couch
   - d chair
3. On the left, there is a ....
   - a television
   - b computer
   - c poster
   - d closet
4. Omar loves watching television ....
   - a in the evening
   - b in the afternoon
   - c in the morning
   - d at night

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. If you want to borrow a book, go to the ....
   - a museum
   - b factory
   - c library
   - d square
2. Mona has a strong .... Her head hurts.
   - a cold
   - b headache
   - c backache
   - d earache
3. A .... is a little wind.
   - a breeze
   - b trunk
   - c branch
   - d leave

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

free - picnics - waterpark - classes

In my town, there is a big zoo next to the school. We can go there after ❶ .... It is really hot in our town, so there is a ❷ .... that is always open. There is a wonderful market that sells all kind of delicious food. There is a big park with lots of trees so we can go for family ❸ .... in the shade.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Reda. I'm eleven years old. I want to spend my next weekend in the Orman Garden. It is one of the most important botanical gardens in Egypt. It is located in Giza. The garden has a lot of beautiful trees and flowers. It has a spring festival every year. The spring festival usually **starts** in March and it is an important Egyptian cultural event in spring. The festival usually lasts for a month. It will be a good vacation.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**starts**" means __________ .

   a finishes b ends c begins d travels

2. Reda will have a __________ vacation.

   a bad b useless c boring d good

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What does Reda want? ______________________________
4. How old is Reda? ______________________________
5. Where's the Orman Garden? ______________________________

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. apartment - I - a big - live - in. ______________________________
2. important - food - healthy - It is - to eat. ______________________________

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Manal could swim when she __________ (be) five.
2. __________ (Doesn't) write in the book.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. is there a station near here ______________________________
2. he has a sore throat ______________________________

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

A wonderful day

Guiding questions

- Where did you go yesterday?
- What did you see?

____

____

4 محافظة المنوفية

إدارة السادات التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Fareeda has two ....

a sisters   b brothers   c cousins   d sons

2. She stayed in her old apartment about .... years.

a three   b twelve   c five   d ten

3. The new apartment is ....

a small   b tiny   c big   d bad

4. They have two ....

a bathrooms   b bedrooms   c ovens   d kitchens

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We went to the .... to take the train to Luxor.

a library   b monument   c bank   d station

2. There is so much .... in the Dead Sea that make you float.

a sugar   b slat   c flour   d rice

3. We need .... if someone hurts his knee.

a scissors   b safety pins   c bandages   d gloves

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

bats - animals - penguin - pouch

Sara and her friends went to the wildlife park last weekend. They saw many interesting ❶ .... Sara thinks that kangaroos are amazing. They can jump on two legs. When they are little, they can sit in their mom's ❷ .... Sara saw many birds, too. Her favorite bird is the ❸ .... It's black and white and looks funny.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Ali. My family members and I travel to different countries, such as Bahrain, France and Dubai. Dubai is making an artificial island in the sea and building the tallest hotels and palaces over them. Tourists from all over the world come to visit them. I find that visiting other countries to know their historical and cultural history is great. That gives us a good feeling to know about other cultures and if **they** are modern or old. That would be a lot better than reading about them. So, I love tourism a lot.

A- Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

1. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to ....

a tourists b cultures c people d books

2. My family members and I travel to .... countries.

a many b any c same d different

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Why do tourists from all over the world come to visit Dubai? ....
4. What is the main idea of the text? ....
5. What's Dubai making in the sea? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. dad - swimmer - good - a - **Is** - your? ....
2. this - is - place - a fantastic - **I** - think. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. My Dad .... (**go**) to Aswan last week.
2. He is sick. He .... (**have**) a headache.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. maps help us to know the directions ....
2. is alexandria near the sea? ....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

A visit to Alexandria

Guiding phrases

beautiful beach - Alexandria Library

....

....

5 محافظة الشرقية

إدارة كفر صقر التعليمية

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Ali loves his __________.

a bedroom   b kitchen   c living room   d balcony

2. On the right, there is a/an __________ with two cushions.

a armchair   b bed   c couch   d chair

3. On the left, there is a __________.

a TV   b computer   c poster   d closet

4. Ali loves watching television __________.

a in the morning   b in the afternoon

c in the evening   d at night

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The pandas eat __________.

a bamboo   b flour   c money   d koshari

2. We should apologize when we make a __________.

a mistake   b party   c pizza   d lunch

3. A __________ is a place where you can borrow books.

a hospital   b library   c bank   d station

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

middle - Park - high - long

New Alamein is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. This beautiful beach is 14 kms ❶ __________ ! There is also a large, green lake right in the ❷ __________ of the city. You can also visit the beautiful International ❸ __________. If you want to learn about the fascinating history of the area, then visit the Archaeological Center.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

London is one of the most exciting cities in the world. **It** often rains here. You can go on the big red bus and visit amazing tourist attractions. You will see famous places like Buckingham Palace, theatres, and the British Museum. You can take a relaxing boat trip on the River Thames. You can also find delicious food in different restaurants there.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about ....
   a Alexandria b Paris c Rome d London
2. It .... rains in London.
   a never b ever c often d rarely

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where can you take a relaxing boat trip? ....
4. What can you visit in London? ....
5. What does the underlined pronoun "**It**" refer to? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. you - an - **Do** - have - earache? ....
2. movie - was - **That** - boring - so. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Did Ahmed .... (**played**) football yesterday?
2. We go to school .... (**on**) the morning.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what did you do last week ....
2. did you have lunch ....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

How to stay healthy

Guiding elements

a lot of water - have a balanced diet

....

....

6 محافظة الغربية

إدارة شرق طنطا التعليمية

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و أختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. I had a lovely day ....
   a yesterday   b last week   c tomorrow   d last month
2. I went to Alexandria with my ....
   a dad   b mum   c friends   d brother
3. We went to Alexandria by ....
   a car   b train   c plane   d bus
4. We went to Alexandria to see our ....
   a uncle   b teacher   c friend   d aunt

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I'm glad because mom didn't buy that chair, it was ....
   a friendly   b comfortable   c safe   d uncomfortable
2. People can go to the .... when it's hot.
   a malls   b beaches   c banks   d markets
3. Good people always tell the ....
   a news   b truth   c surprise   d pills

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

could - funny - missed - can

My name is Nada. I was born in Luxor. We moved to Cairo fifteen years ago. When we moved away, I was sad. I ❶ .... my old friends too much. Last week, I met my old friend Eman in Cairo. She told me ❷ .... stories. She said when I was little, I ❸ .... run fast. I couldn't draw a lion. I invited her for lunch. I was so happy.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the Nile. They used its water for drinking, cooking, and washing. They also used mud from the river to make bricks for their houses. The mud bricks made very strong walls. Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes cool. The mud bricks helped do this. Some people also painted their homes white to make them cooler. Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs, which were the coolest part of the house. Families often cooked, ate,relaxed, and slept there on **hot** nights.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text talks about ---------- in Ancient Egypt.
   - a beaches
   - b seasons
   - c homes
   - d flowers
2. The opposite of the word "**hot**" is ----------.
   - a cold
   - b bad
   - c strong
   - d fast

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why did Ancient Egyptians make their homes near the Nile? ------------
4. Did the mud make strong walls? ------------------------------
5. What did the Ancient Egyptians use to make their homes cooler? ----------

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. doesn't - **Huda** - have - an earache. ---------------------------
2. your friend - is - good - time - **Spending** - with. ----------------------

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. ---------- (Comes) here, Hana.
2. I was born ---------- (at) 2010.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. hala had a picnic last Friday ------------------------------
2. did ahmed play football? ------------------------------

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Library rules

Guiding elements

books - mobile phones

----

7 محافظة الدقهلية
إدارة شرق المنصورة

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:
استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Laila is a ....
   a teacher   b doctor   c vet   d firefighter
2. Honey is also used as a ....
   a drink   b type   c treatment   d bacteria
3. Honey was first used to treat wounds by .... doctors.
   a Chinese   b French   c American   d Egyptian
4. Some types of honey contain things that can help to .... bacteria.
   a eat   b sleep   c kill   d find

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. .... are very big cats.
   a Pandas   b Lions   c Bats   d Dogs
2. Writing 100 words in a minute is ....
   a unhappy   b immoral   c impossible   d unsafe
3. Our body has many .... to help us stand up.
   a eyes   b ears   c fingers   d bones

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:
اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

jump - bats - penguin - pouch

Mona and her friends went to the wildlife park last weekend. They saw many interesting animals. Mona thinks that kangaroos are amazing. They can ❶.......... on two legs. When they are little, they can sit in their mom's ❷.......... . Mona saw many birds, too. Her favorite bird is the ❸.......... . It's black and white and looks funny.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Last year, I went to Dubai with my family. The flight from Egypt took about four hours, but it was comfortable and we all slept. It didn't take long time to get through the airport. When we arrived, we got our suitcases straight away. Dubai is a wonderful place to visit. There are lots of high-rise buildings, but there are also many parks, garden, and trees to sit under and relax. We went to Burj Khalifa and met a lot of tourists there. It was a lovely vacation.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The flight from ---------- was comfortable.
   a England b France c Mexico d Egypt
2. Dubai is a ---------- place to visit.
   a fit b bad c wonderful d boring

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Where did the writer and his family go last year? --------------------
4. Who did they meet at Burj Khalifa? --------------------
5. How long did the flight from Egypt to Dubai take about ? --------------------

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. drink - you - of - plenty - Should - water? --------------------
2. have - legs - Snails - or - arms - don't. --------------------

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. He ---------- (can't) swim when he was five.
2. The waiter is ---------- (friendly) . He doesn't smile to the guests.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. he bought a new shirt last week --------------------
2. do you have a cough --------------------

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

A visit to Alexandria

Guiding phrases

amazing restaurants - visit the beach

----

8 محافظة البحيرة
إدارة كوم حمادة التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Ramez went to the .... yesterday.
   a hotel b wildlife park c club d school
2. .... can swim. They live in cold places.
   a Penguins b Lions c Kangaroos d Elephants
3. The .... were so beautiful.
   a kangaroos b lions c parrots d elephants
4. Ramez fed penguins some ....
   a rice b fish c meat d beans

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. If you want to borrow a book, go to the ....
   a museum b factory c library d square
2. .... live on snow and ice.
   a Parrots b Kangaroos c Penguins d Lions
3. In Ancient Egypt, there were .... to sit and sleep on.
   a baskets b pots c reed mats d gardens

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

doctor - cough - earache - ankle

Fares didn't have a good day at the club yesterday. Five of his friends didn't come to the club. His friend Tarek hurt his (1) .... at a football practice. Amr has an (2) .... from swimming. Ola has a toothache. Amira has a (3) .... and a sore throat.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Ramez went to the new wildlife park yesterday. He had a wonderful day out with his family. They stayed in the car. They could see the lions through the trees. The kangaroos were interesting. When they are little, they can sit inside their mom's **pouch**. Ramez's favorite birds were the parrots. They were so beautiful, and they could talk! Bats were all hiding, and they couldn't see them in the dark.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about Ramez's visit to the ----------- .
   a square b bank c theatre d wildlife park
2. A "**pouch**" is a small place inside the body of the ----------- .
   a parrot b monkey c penguin d kangaroo

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What were Ramez's favorite birds? -----------------------------
4. When did Ramez go to the new wildlife park? -----------------------------
5. Where could they see the lions? -----------------------------

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. a room - share - I - my - with - sister. -----------------------------
2. the - do - shopping mall - **How** - I - get to? -----------------------------

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. When she was ten, she ----------- (can) use a tablet.
2. She ----------- (not have) a headache.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. adam is very friendly -----------------------------
2. amr visited his uncle yesterday -----------------------------

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Your bedroom

Guiding phrases

on the right - in the middle

----

9 محافظة كفر الشيخ

إدارة دسوق التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. The dugong is a/an ....
   - a wild animal
   - b sea animal
   - c insect
   - d bird
2. It eats ....
   - a grass
   - b fruit
   - c banana
   - d meat
3. It has got a lovely friendly ....
   - a eye
   - b ear
   - c face
   - d head
4. Its nickname is the ....
   - a fat cow
   - b ugly cow
   - c big cow
   - d sea cow

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Very small things that can make you ill ....
   - a birds
   - b bacteria
   - c farmers
   - d insects
2. They didn't recognize the road because they were ....
   - a lost
   - b happy
   - c lucky
   - d clever
3. This .... serves delicious dishes.
   - a hospital
   - b library
   - c restaurant
   - d bank

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

pots - insects - delicious - papyrus

The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from now. There were reed mats to sit and sleep on it. They used ❶.......... to cover the windows. This kept ❷.......... outside. In every home, there were large ❸.......... and baskets for storing.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

London is one of the most exciting cities in the world. It often rains here, but it doesn't matter because there are lots of fun things to do. You can go on a big red bus and visit amazing tourist attractions. You can see famous places like Buckingham Palace, theaters, and the British Museum. You can take a "**relaxing**" boat trip on the River Thames.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**relaxing**" means ....
   a free b busy c comfortable d drawing
2. You can take a .... trip on the River Thames.
   a school b bus c train d boat

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the text in one sentence. ....
4. Mention some famous places in London. ....
5. What can you go on in London? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. hospital - is - a busy - The - place. ....
2. he - a - throat - Does - have - sore? ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. He is .... (interesting) in playing video games.
2. Mona .... (can) ride a bike when she was five.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. thank you for helping me ....
2. was Ramy happy yesterday ....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Honey

Guiding elements

treat wounds - kill bacteria

....

....

10 محافظة الاسماعيلية

إدارة الإسماعيلية التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. It's important to eat .... foods.

   a fast b healthy c sweet d expensive

2. We can do lots of things to .... our health.

   a exercise b make c look after d eat

3. you should do some .... every day.

   a friends b research c cookies d exercise

4. It's important to keep your body ....

   a moving b relaxing c sleeping d running

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. .... have shells and they don't have legs or arms.

   a Dolphins b Lions c Snails d Pandas

2. That phone is very ...., but I want to buy a cheaper one.

   a active b expensive c careful d boring

3. My parents didn't buy that couch because it was ....

   a uncomfortable b friendly c unhappy d irregular

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

checked - citadel - Dead - alive

We went to Jordan on vacation. We arrived in Amman and ❶ .... into our hotel in the middle of the city. The next day, we visited the famous Amman Museum We also explored the Roman Amphitheater, and the Archaeological ❷ .... We also had plans to go to the ❸ .... Sea. No visit to Jordan is complete without a trip to the Dead Sea.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

It's Tuesday and Baher is at home. He can't go to school because he has a cold. He must stay in bed. He has a cough and a sore throat so he can't talk. The doctor says he must not run or play. He must sleep and drink a lot of water. All his family are worried about him. They hope he will get better soon.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about ....

   a Baher's school b Baher's doctor

   c Baher's illness d Baher's clothes

2. Baher has a ....

   a cold b backache c headache d toothache

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the text in one sentence. ....
4. Why can't Baher talk? ....
5. What must Baher do to get better? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. dugong - unusual - is - animal - the - My favorite ....
2. could - when - Ola - read - was - three - she ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. No, she .... (not have) a sore throat.
2. Last year, I .... (cannot) use the computer.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. What's the matter, dina ....
2. Ahmed doesn t have a cold ....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Your town

Guiding phrases

exciting places - a lot of parks

....

....



محافظة بورسعيد

إدارة بورسعيد التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Arwa lives in a nice __________ .

a shop b apartment c farm d ship

2. It's a big apartment with __________ bedrooms and two bathrooms.

a three b two c four d one

3. The apartment is a __________ place with cool designs.

a tall b big c modern d old

4. Arwa __________ it very much.

a dislikes b hates c eats d likes

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The mud bricks made very strong __________ .

a walls b windows c doors d chairs

2. Salma isn't kind to her friend. She is __________ .

a friendly b good c kind d unfriendly

3. The travelers enjoyed the __________ and cool breeze under the tree.

a shape b shop c shade d ship

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

amazing - places - attractions - Library

Alexandria is a big city. It is one of the most exciting cities to visit. It has ❶ __________ restaurants, markets, and museums. You can go swimming in the sea. The ❷ __________ of Alexandria and Qaitbay Citadel are the most important tourist ❸ __________ there. Tourists can go inside them and spend a wonderful time.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Sara. I'm eleven years old. I like playing sports at the club. I play tennis with my friends. On Friday I went to the club, but I couldn't see my friend Amal because <u>she</u> hurt her knee at tennis practice last night. I'm worried about my friend. I hope she'll feel better tomorrow. Two of my friends had a cold so the coach told us to be careful when we have a cough or a sore throat. We should stay home.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Sara is .... years old.

   a 10   b 11   c 15   d 9

2. The underlined pronoun "<u>she</u>" refers to ....

   a Amal   b Sara   c the coach   d tennis

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What does Sara like? ....
4. Why couldn't Sara see her friend? ....
5. When did Sara go to the club? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. have - legs - <u>Snails</u> - or - arms. ....
2. to - important - <u>It's</u> - enough - sleep - get. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Rehab .... (is) unhappy last weekend.
2. A: .... (could) Yasmeen make a sandwich? B: No, she can't.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. fish and other animals have a skeleton ....
2. did she like cats ....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

The doctor's job

Guiding phrases

help patients - give medicine

....

....

12 محافظة الإسكندرية

إدارة الجمرك التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. My uncle is a ....
   a teacher b scientist c driver d doctor
2. When he was younger, he traveled a lot in .... America.
   a east b west c north d south
3. People were very .... and helped him with his work there.
   a nervous b friendly c angry d worried
4. He was very interested in howler ....
   a monkeys b lions c lizards d foxes

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. .... are black and white. They eat bamboo.
   a Lions b Monkeys c Pandas d Bats
2. My father always drinks his tea with .... in the balcony.
   a mint b oil c garlic d salt
3. We can't travel to a different country without a ....
   a camera b phone c computer d passport

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

sad - cats - parrot - animals

Last week, Hany went to the zoo with his family. He enjoyed it very much. They saw lots of different ❶ .... like lions and elephants. He saw his favorite bird, the ❷ .... He was a bit ❸ .... because he didn't see the giraffes. He's doing a project about them.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Aya. Last Saturday's morning, we were very busy because we were having a birthday party in the evening. It was my sister's birthday. My mother was in the kitchen. She was cooking all kinds of nice things to eat. My father was out at the market. He bought some fresh fruit. He also went to the toy shop to buy a present for my sister. Outside, my aunt was cleaning the windows. I was in the dining room. I put lots of flowers into the vases which were standing on the table. We worked hard except my little brother who played with the dog in the garden.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Aya's .... was cleaning the window.

   a uncle   b cousin   c aunt   d son

2. Aya's brother played with the dog in the ....

   a garden   b bedroom   c living room   d kitchen

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why were Aya's family busy last Saturday's morning? ....
4. Who was cooking all kinds of food? ....
5. What did Aya put into the vases? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. you - like - Do - honey - eating - ,Amr? ....
2. the - penguins - fish - She - some - fed. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. They .... (visit) the museum last month.
2. Don't .... (eats) all the cookies.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. snails don't have legs or arms ....
2. do you have a new apartment ....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

My new apartment

Guiding phrases

big rooms - clean balcony

....

....

13 محافظة مطروح

إدارة مطروح التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Hala went to a __________ last week.
   a zoo   b club   c wildlife park   d mall
2. She watched the __________ from the car.
   a dogs   b tigers   c parrots   d lions
3. Some kangaroos had their babies in their __________.
   a arms   b pouches   c legs   d eyes
4. Hala liked the __________ because they were beautiful and colorful.
   a parrots   b kangaroos   c trees   d lions

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. __________ sleep upside down on trees.
   a Pandas   b Bats   c Lions   d Parrots
2. My mother puts her money in the __________.
   a square   b bank   c factory   d library
3. One day, a villager wanted to __________ his beans in the market.
   a sell   b plant   c grow   d cut

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

treatment - special - honey - school

My name is Eman. I'm a doctor. I work in a hospital. My favorite food is ❶ __________. I like honey because it's not only a food but it's also a ❷ __________ for some injuries and illnesses. Honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years. I use honey too, but it's a ❸ __________ honey. Only doctors use it.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Fares is sad. He didn't have a good day at the club. Five people didn't come to the club today because they had problems. His friend Tarek hurt his ankle at football practice last night. Amr has an earache from swimming. Lama has a toothache. She went to the **dentist**. Two of his friends have a cold. The coach told them to be careful when they have a cough or a sore throat. They should stay home. Fares is ill, too. He has a backache, and he is worried about his friends.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**dentist**" means a doctor who takes care of our ....

   a bones b lungs c stomach d teeth

2. .... has an earache from swimming.

   a Fares b Lama c Amr d Tarek

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why is Fares sad? ....
4. What should they do whey they have a cough or a sore throat? ....
5. Who told them to be careful? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. houses - a special - Egyptian - style - **Ancient** - had. ....
2. a - there - here - **Is** - library - near? ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. When I was young, I could .... (**sang**).
2. She doesn't .... (**has**) a headache. She has an earache.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. amira has a sore throat ....
2. Did hala like the kangaroos ....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

How to stay healthy

Guiding phrases

exercise every day - a lot of water

....

....

14 محافظة دمياط

إدارة دمياط التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Last week, my friends and I were in __________ .
   a Egypt b Rome c China d New York
2. It was a/an __________ visit.
   a messy b bad c exciting d boring
3. We ate __________ pasta.
   a American b Egyptian c French d Italian
4. We arrived at our __________ at night.
   a hotel b home c park d apartment

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. A meeting point is somewhere where people __________ .
   a travel b meet c leave d save
2. She is very __________ because she lost her bag.
   a unfriendly b immoral c unhappy d uncomfortable
3. He is a foolish boy. He speaks __________ .
   a rudely b politely c nicely d quietly

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

market - traditional - eat - restaurant

I've lived in Giza all my life. I have a 1 __________ here. We serve 2 __________ Egyptian food. We have excellent supermarkets, but I prefer to buy my ingredients at the 3 __________ in the old town.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. There is a lot to see and do there. It is a big city with lots of amazing restaurant, stores, markets and museums.

My friend Jens is visiting Alexandria from Germany. He thinks it is really cool here. He thinks there are some good museums, but he hasn't been to any yet. He loves sitting in the roof garden of his hotel, drinking sweet Egyptian mint tea and chatting to other people. It's very relaxing.

My friend Hana has lived in Alexandria all her life. She owns a restaurant cuisine. They serve traditional Egyptian food using lovely fresh local ingredients. They have excellent supermarkets, but she prefers to buy her ingredients at the market in the old town.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My friend Jens like drinking tea in the ....
   a beaches   b shop   c museum   d roof
2. My friend Hana buys her ingredients from the ....
   a hotel   b market   c supermarket   d park

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence. ....
4. Why does the writer's friend like to visit Alexandria? ....
5. What does Hana own in Alexandria? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. armchair - is - This - uncomfortable - very - blue. ....
2. couldn't - Maha - when - a baby - was - swim - she. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. They .... (don't) travel to Aswan last year.
2. This house is upside down. It's an .... (usual) house.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. the parrot is a very beautiful bird ....
2. what did you do yesterday ....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Honey and its uses

Guiding questions

1- Do you like eating honey?
2- How can you use honey as a medicine?

....

....

15 محافظة الفيوم

إدارة إطسا التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Omar loves his ....

a bedroom   b kitchen   c living room   d balcony

2. On the right, there is a/an ....

a armchair   b bed   c couch   d chair

3. On the left, there is a ....

a television   b computer   c poster   d closet

4. Omar loves watching television ....

a in the evening   b in the afternoon
c in the morning   d at night

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. When something is ...., we can't use it.

a unhappy   b useless   c useful   d exciting

2. You can see the most amazing .... at the museum.

a shopping mall   b squares   c monuments   d banks

3. Adel has a/an .... His head hurts.

a headache   b earache   c cough   d sore throat

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

relax - buildings - parks - time

Singapore is a wonderful city. There are lots of high-rise (1) ...., but there are also many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and (2) .... We spent a lot of (3) .... there. You really forget that you're in the middle of a busy city.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein. The city is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. This beautiful beach is 14 kms long. There is also a large, green lake right in the middle of the city. You can also visit the beautiful International Park. If you want to learn about **fascinating** history of the area, then visit the Archaeological Center. There are some amazing treasures there. I can't wait to visit in New Alamein.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The beach is 14 .... long.
   a meters b kilometers c centimeters d kilograms
2. The word "**fascinating**" means ....
   a boring b ugly c useless d beautiful

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where can you go when it's hot? ....
4. What can you find in the Archaeological Center? ....
5. Are there treasures in New Alamein? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. year - Singapore - I - last - visited. ....
2. read - Choose - to - book - a good. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I get up .... (at) the morning.
2. .... (Didn't) play in the street.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. Many tourists come to visit egypt ....
2. does adel have a sore throat? ....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Your favorite animal

Guiding questions

What is it?
Where does it live?

....

....

16 محافظة بني سويف

إدارة ناصر التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Omar is an excellent __________ .
   a father b teacher c engineer d student
2. He likes to __________ his friends.
   a walk b hit c help d fight
3. He likes to read books in the__________ .
   a restaurant b beach c library d home
4. His favorite subject is __________ .
   a English b Arabic c French d Italian

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. They went to the __________ to play football.
   a hospital b library c museum d playground
2. I like the beach, it is a __________ place.
   a relaxing b dark c boring d dangerous
3. We put our clothes in a __________ when we travel.
   a camera b passport c ticket d suitcase

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

plant - shade - air - feed

Trees are very important in our life. Trees give us ❶ __________ and shelter in hot weather. They help to clean the ❷ __________ . They give us food, too. We should ❸ __________ more trees.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Mona. I moved to a new apartment last week. I love this new apartment. It is much bigger than our **old** apartment. The new kitchen is bigger, and the oven is more modern. It's much easier to cook in. The living room is bigger than the old one so we can have a bigger television. We have three bedrooms now. I share a room with my sister, Dalia, but our bedroom is really big. I like our apartment.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The opposite of underlined word "**old**" is ....
   a new   b ugly   c dark   d bad
2. Mona moved to a new ....
   a school   b class   c apartment   d city

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the main idea of the text in a sentence ....
4. How many bedrooms are there in the new apartment? ....
5. Who does Mona share a room with? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. you - **Do** - living - like - here? ....
2. to - went - **Ramez** - a wildlife - park. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Did it .... (**rained**) yesterday?
2. I .... (**has**) a headache.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. do you like fish ....
2. We went to luxor last year ....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

Your favorite place in Egypt

Guiding questions

What is your favorite place?
What can you see in this place?

....

....

17 محافظة أسيوط

إدارة ابانوب التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Last summer, I went with my family to ....

a Luxor b Aswan c Alexandria d Cairo

2. We went there by ....

a taxi b train c plane d ship

3. We had .... at a nice restaurant.

a lunch b snack c dinner d breakfast

4. We visited Alexandria Library and..........

a pyramids b Qaitbay Citadel c Egyptian Museum d zoo

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. A lot of .... visit Egypt from all over the world.

a towns b tourists c squares d factories

2. When you travel abroad, you usually need a..........

a passport b diary c pen d book

3. I went to the .... to buy new clothes yesterday.

a club b school c library d shopping mall

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

cold - body - animals - pouch

I went to a wildlife park yesterday with my family. We saw a lot of ❶ .... .We saw kangaroos. The little kangaroos were sitting inside their mom's ❷ .... We saw penguins, too. They are in special ❸ .... place.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Last week, it was my mother's birthday. All my family came to celebrate. All my cousins, aunts, uncles and my friends came. There was lots of food, meat salad, cookies and fruit. I played with my friends and my cousins. I ate a big slice of chocolate cake and drank a carton of orange juice. We said "Happy birthday to my mother. My sister, and I gave her a present. It was a special day. We were happy.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I drank a carton of .... juice.
   a banana   b apple   c orange   d mango
2. My family come to celebrate my .... birthday.
   a sister's   b mother's   c cousin's   d brother's

B. Answer the following questions:

3. When's the mother's birthday? ....
4. What did they eat at the party? ....
5. Give a suitable title for this passage. ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. is - What - the - matter? ....
2. borrow - I - books - to - want - some. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. My birthday party is .... (at) May 21st.
2. She can .... (gets) high marks in this exam.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. my favorite hobby is reading ....
2. does the snake have legs ....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

New Alamein

Guiding phrases

beautiful beaches - fascinating history

....

....

18 محافظة أسوان

إدارة كوم امبو التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. We went to the theme park on __________.

a Sunday   b vacation   c the weekend   d Friday

2. We took lots of photos with my __________.

a phone   b tablet   c computer   d camera

3. We had a wonderful __________ there.

a time   b picnic   c view   d trip

4. We went home by __________.

a plane   b taxi   c car   d train

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. __________ fly at night. They sleep upside down on trees.

a Penguins   b Snails   c Bats   d Pandas

2. The view from the __________ is wonderful.

a oven   b elevator   c balcony   d armchair

3. This __________ serves delicious dishes.

a hospital   b restaurant   c library   d bank

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

wall - closet - next - middle

I love my bedroom. I share it with my sister. On the right is my bed with a desk ❶ __________ to it. On the left is my sister's bed. In the ❷ __________ of the room there is an armchair with two cushions and a big closet. On the ❸ __________ there are lots of posters of animals.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Last Monday, Soha and Habiba went to the wildlife park. When they arrived, it was very hot in the park. They saw lots of different animals and birds such as parrots, kangaroos and penguins. Soha liked penguins the best. She thinks they look funny with their white and black feathers. Habiba liked pandas. They are **huge** with thick white and black fur. Soha and Habiba had a nice time and they were very happy.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**huge**" means very ....
   - a small
   - b big
   - c tall
   - d short
2. .... liked the penguins best.
   - a Mona
   - b Habiba
   - c Soha
   - d Sara

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What did Soha and Habiba go to the wildlife park? ....
4. What is the main idea of the text? ....
5. Did Soha and Habiba have a happy time there? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. is - bank, - **Where** - please - the? ....
2. love - **I** - tea - drinking - mint. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. We moved to a new city .... (**at**) 2014.
2. Last week we .... (**go**) to the market.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. do you have a sore throat ....
2. i visited my aunt last week ....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

The importance of trees

Guiding phrases

give shade - healthy food

....

....

19 محافظة البحر الأحمر

إدارة الغردقة التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Amir's favorite unusual animal is the ....

a lion   b dugong   c penguin   d panda

2. It is from ....

a Egypt   b India   c America   d France

3. It's very ....

a sad   b bad   c cute   d awful

4. Its nickname is the..........

a sea cow   b sea bed   c grass   d face

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. This .... is very uncomfortable. I can't sit on it.

a armchair   b closet   c shower   d oven

2. My sister is a good .... She reads about 20 books a week.

a farmer   b footballer   c climber   d reader

3. Laila wrote about her trip in her ....

a wall   b bag   c ticket   d diary

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

friends - sleep - spend - diet

There are many things we should do to stay healthy. It's important to drink water to keep your body works well. You should ❶ .... time with early. Experts think that the best way to stay healthy is to ❷ ....time with your ❸ .... and family. At that time you focus on being happy.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Hassan. I live in a perfect town near the Nile. There's a big zoo next to my school. You can see lots of animals and birds there. You can feed some of them, too. The weather is usually hot in summer, so there is a big waterpark that is always open. It costs five pounds to get in. There are many parks along the Nile in my town. You can enjoy having picnics or sitting in the green areas. Also, you can take a boat trip on the Nile.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Hassan lives in a/an ---------- town.
   a small b noisy c perfect d old
2. There's a big ---------- next to the school.
   a park b zoo c mall d hospital

B. Answer the following questions:

3. How much does it cost to get in the waterpark? --------------------
4. What can hassan enjoy on the Nile? --------------------
5. Summarize the text in two sentences. --------------------

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. didn't - She - school - yesterday - come to.
2. favorite - place - the - My - is - beach.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. What ---------- (do) you do yesterday?
2. She doesn't ---------- (has) a cut on her arm.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. could you read when you were a child --------------------
2. she wrote about her trip --------------------

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٣٠) كلمة عن:

"Homes in Egypt"

Guiding phrases

near the Nile - made mud bricks

----

20 امتحان الأزهر الشريف - منطقة اسيوط الأزهريه

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع و أختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their .... (snow - cool - warm)
2. The .... bricks helped to keep their homes cool. (mud - clay - pen)
3. Some people painted their homes .... to make them cooler. (green - white - black)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog: أقرأ و أكمل المحادثة

• trees - wildlife - Could - yesterday

Ayman : Where did you go ❶ ....?

Ramez : I went to the new ❷ .... park.

Ayman : ❸ .... you go near the lions?

Ramez : No, we stayed in the car. But we could see them through the ❹ ....

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the following questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Hello, I'm Waleed's dad and this is my farm. I have got some sheep and two buffaloes on my farm. We used to have donkeys, but we don't have any now. I grow a lot of dates, onions and some potatoes. We live near the river. I lived in a traditional house with my family. I have three children. Waleed is my **youngest** child. The women in my family are my wife and my mother. There are two men, me and my dad.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. What does Waleed's father have got on his farm?

....

2. What does Waleed's father grow?

....

B - Choose the correct answer:

3. Waleed's family lives near the .... (ocean - desert - river)

4. Waleed's father lives in a ....house. (old - traditional - modern)

5. The underlined word "**youngest**" is the opposite of ....

(oldest - nearest - shortest)

D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We have a big bedroom, so I .... it with my sister.

   a cook   b get   c share

2. Do you .... a headache?

   a have   b has   c is

3. She .... drive a car. She takes the bus.

   a can   b can't   c couldn't

4. We had lunch at an Italian ....

   a museum   b store   c restaurant

5. We can't travel to different country without a ....

   a camera   b passport   c phone

5 Read and reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اقرأ و اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملا صحيحة:

1. did - people - use - How - homes - to build?

----

2. honey - likes - Omar - eating.

----

3. rest - We - under - the - trees.

----

4. library - a - There - is - our town - in.

----

5. did - in - eat - the park - What - they?

----

21 امتحان الأزهر الشريف - منطقة الدقهلية الأزهريه

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع و أختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. I get up at .... o'clock. (six - seven - eight)
2. I have my .... with my parents. (lunch - breakfast - dinner)
3. I like .... (apples - honey - oranges)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog: أقرأ و أكمل المحادثة

matter - have - doctor's - going

Sami : Where are you ❶ ....?

Hani : I'm going to the ❷ ....

Sami : What's the ❸ ....?

Ramez : I ❹ .... a sore throat.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the following questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Hello, I'm Magdy. I'm 15 years old. My father has a farm. My brother and I play on our farm on the weekends. We have a big house on the farm. There are four rooms in our house. I love my bedroom. I share it with my brother. We are a happy family.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. How old is Magdy?

....

2. What does Magdy's father have?

....

B - Choose the correct answer:

3. There are .... rooms in Magdy's house. (three - four - six)
4. They are .... family. (nice - sad - happy)
5. Magdy loves his .... (living room - bathroom - bedroom)

D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We have dinner at the ....

   a bank   b museum   c restaurant

2. I like sitting on this armchair. It's very ....

   a comfortable   b unfriendly   c unlucky

3. He .... to Aswan two years ago.

   a go   b went   c goes

4. I couldn't .... them in the dark.

   a saw   b sees   c see

5. A .... can't fly, but it can swim.

   a bat   b bird   c parrot

5 Read and reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اقرأ و اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملا صحيحة:

1. a headache - you - Do - have?

   ....

2. basketball - I - play - can. ....

   ....

3. eat - Don't - library - the - in.

   ....

4. balcony - is - The - fantastic.

   ....

5. should - stay - We - home.

   ....

22 امتحان طلاب الدمج

(A) Reading

1 Read and choose the correct answer to complete the text:

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

armchair - share - to - On

I love my bedroom. I __________ it with my sister. On the right, there is my bed with a desk next __________ it. __________ the left, there is my sister's bed. In the middle of the room, there is an __________ with two cushions on it.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. A __________ is a place where you can borrow books.
   a hospital b library c club d park
2. I take __________ with my phone.
   a keys b photos c money d trip
3. You can catch a train at the __________.
   a hospital b library c station d park
4. I go swimming __________ Fridays.
   a at b in c with d on

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Last Friday, Sara and Israa went to the wildlife park. They saw lots of different animals and birds. They saw the penguins. The penguins live on ice and snow. They are black and white. They can swim, but they can't fly. Sara liked the pandas. Pandas eat bamboo. Sara and Israa had lunch under a tree. They also took many pictures. They had a nice time there.

Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is mainly about a trip to the __________.
   a wildlife park b hospital c zoo d club
2. They had lunch under a __________.
   a tree b house c restaurant d cave

3. The pandas eat ....

a fish b bamboo c meat d koshari

4. The penguins are .... and white.

a black b red c green d yellow

(B) Writing

4 Choose the correct or the following sentences from a, b or c:

اختر الجمل الصحيحة:

1. went - the - Ramez - to - wildlife - park.

a Ramez went the wildlife to park.

b Ramez to went the wildlife park.

c Ramez went to the wildlife park.

2. has - Samy - a - cold.

a Samy a cold has.

b Samy has a cold.

c Samy cold a has.

5 Choose the correct order of the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d:

اختر الترتيب الصحيح للجمل لتكوين فقرة إنشائية:

a	I went with my friends.	1 - ( )
b	I'm Sara.	2 - ( )
c	We had lunch under a tree there.	3 - ( )
d	Yesterday, I went to Al-Azhar Park.	4 - ( )

Listening Material

نصوص الاستماع الواردة فى كراسة التدريبات

General Tests

 محافظة القاهرة - إدارة دار السلام

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Once there was a very big old tree in a hot, dry land. It had lived for many years. Its trunk was very wide and it had many green branches. The tree gave shelter and rest to hundreds of travelers.

 محافظة الجيزة - إدارة أوسيم

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

My friend Ahmed lives in Alexandria. Alexandria is a big city in the north of Egypt. It has a nice weather. It's famous for the beautiful beaches.

 محافظة القليوبية - إدارة طوخ

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

My brother Omar loves his bedroom. On the right, there is an armchair with two cushions. On the left, there is a television. Omar loves watching television in the evening.

 محافظة المنوفية - إدارة السادات

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

My cousin Fareeda has two sisters. She stayed in her old apartment about ten years. Then, her father had a new job. They moved to a new apartment. The new apartment is big. They have two bedrooms with a big balcony.

نصوص الاستماع الخاصة باسئلة الاستماع الواردة فى كراسة التدريبات والاختبارات الخاصة بكتاب **Bit by Bit**

March Test 1 on Units 7-8

I like eating honey for breakfast. Scientists know that some types of honey contain things that can help to kill bacteria. This helps wounds to heal more quickly. But don't put it on your cut knee.

March Test 2 on Units 7-8

My friend Daila likes blogging about different things. She's writing about unusual homes. Daila found the upside down house in the Netherlands online.

April Test 1 on Units 9-10

There are many rules we should follow in the library. We shouldn't eat in the library. We shouldn't use our cell phones there. We shouldn't lose our books. We should drink water outside the library.

April Test 2 on Units 9-10

I'm Peter. I'm from America. I went to Alexandria on holiday. I like Alexandria. It's a beautiful city near the sea. There are lots of amazing restaurant, stores, markets and museums. I love the mix of modern and old buildings. Also, I like to find out about the culture and traditions.



محافظة الشرقية - إدارة كفر صقر

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Ali is a pupil in primary five. He has a big apartment. Ali loves his bedroom. On the right, there is an armchair with two cushions. On the left there is a closet. Ali loves watching television in the evening.

6 محافظة الغربية - إدارة شرق طنطا

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

I had a lovely day yesterday. I went to Alexandria with my friends. We went by train as it was very comfortable. We went to see our English teacher Mr. Ali. He was very happy to see us.



محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة شرق المنصورة

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Laila is a doctor. She likes honey because it's useful. Honey is also used as a treatment. Honey was first used to treat wounds by Egyptian doctors. Some types of honey contain things that can help to kill bacteria.

8 محافظة البحيرة - إدارة كوم حمادة

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Ramez went to the wildlife park yesterday. He saw a lot of animals. There were penguins. They can swim, they live in cold places. The parrots were so beautiful. He fed penguins some fish. He had a great time there.

9 محافظة كفر الشيخ - إدارة دسوق

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

The dugong is a sea animal. It lives all his life in water. It eats grass from the sea bed. The dugong has got a lovely friendly face. It is cute. Its nickname is the sea cow.



محافظة الإسماعيلية - إدارة الإسماعيلية

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

It's important to eat healthy foods like fruit and vegetables and to have a balanced diet. We can do lots of things to look after our health. You should do some exercise every day. It's very important to keep your body moving.

11 محافظة بورسعيد - إدارة بورسعيد

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Arwa lives in a nice apartment. It's a big apartment with two bedrooms and two bathrooms. The apartment is a modern place with cool designs. Arwa likes it very much.



محافظة الإسكندرية - إدارة الجمرك

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

My uncle is a scientist. When he was younger, he traveled a lot in North America. People were very friendly and helped him with his work there. He was very interested in howler monkeys.

13 محافظة مطروح - إدارة مطروح

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Hala went to a wildlife park. She watched the lions from the car. She saw the kangaroos running. Some kangaroos had their babies in their pouches. Hala liked the parrots because they were beautiful and colorful.

14 محافظة دمياط - إدارة دمياط

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Last week, my friends and I were in Rome. It was an exciting visit. We ate Italian pasta. We arrived at our hotel at night.



محافظة الفيوم - إدارة إطسا

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

My name is Omar. I love my living room. I spend most of my time here in the living room. On the right, there is a couch with two modern cushions. On the left, there is an armchair and a big television in front of it. I love watching television at night with my family.



محافظة بنى سويف - إدارة ناصر

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Omar is an excellent student. He likes to help his friends. He likes to read books in the library. His favorite subject is Arabic. His teachers like him.



محافظة أسيوط - إدارة أبانوب

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Last summer, I went with my family to Alexandria. We went there by train. We had dinner at a nice restaurant. We visited Alexandria Library and Qaitbay Citadel. We had a great time there.



محافظة اسوان - إدارة كوم امبو

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

I went with my friend Hisham to the theme park on vacation. We went on different rides. The weather was nice. We had lunch and ice cream. We took lots of photos with my phone. We had a wonderful time there. Then, we went home by taxi at five o'clock.



محافظة البحر الأحمر - إدارة الغردقة

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Amir's favorite unusual animal is the dugong. It is from Egypt. It's very cute. Its nickname is the sea cow.



امتحان الأزهر - منطقة أسيوط الازهرية

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Ancient Egyptians were great at building their homes. They wanted to keep their homes cool. The mud brick helped to keep their homes cool. Some people painted their homes white to make them cooler.



امتحان الأزهر - منطقة الدقهلية الازهرية

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

My name's Adel. I'm a pupil in primary five I get up at seven o'clock. I have breakfast with my parents. I like honey.